Contents

0.1 General resources

- Tofugu ひらがな and カタカナ guides
- Dictionaries:
  - ‣ Takoboto Android dictionary
  - ‣ Jisho dictionary (MT)
  - ‣ Jotoba dictionary, an upgraded version of Jisho
  - ‣ bunpro dictionary for JLPT classifications and example sentences
- goo dictionary for synonyms and detailed definitions
- Weblio theasurus for antonyms
- JLPT 先生 for grammar and 漢字 lists
- Minna no nihongo books (XM)

G1 The writing system

The writing system comprises three scripts: 平仮名（ひらがな）、片仮名（カタカナ）、漢字（かんじ）. For details of the former two scripts, refer to the supplementary PDF.

G1.1 [Interlude] Morphemes, phonemes, phones

This entire section is courtesy of SL.

Phonemes are the smallest unit of mental representation of sound. They do not carry meaning by themselves, but they can alter the meaning pictured by the listener.

Morphemes are the smallest unit of meaning, and comprise two levels: a phonological level and a semantic level. The phonological level states how it is pronounced (a string of phonemes), and the semantic level states what meaning is attached to the phonology.

For instance, 日々 contains a repetition of the same phoneme because the sound and meaning of the two 漢字 are identical. In contrast, 日日 contains two different morphemes, because the sound (and meaning) of the two 漢字 are different!

When determining whether a morpheme is repeated or not, consider the sound and meaning first before looking at the orthography. "Orthography is truly an afterthought[, in the design of languages]."

G1.2 Iteration marks

Read main article on Wikipedia.

Only the (horizontal text) 漢字 iteration mark 々 is commonly used today. It is used to represent a duplicated character representing the same morpheme. For example, 日々 means "daily, day after day".

Writing 々 instead of repeating the 漢字 is preferred, provided that:
1. (tl;dr: morpheme is repeated) the reading of the repeated 漢字 must be the same, though certain changes are permitted such as *rendaku* (unvoiced consonant becomes voiced, i.e. the dakuten, e.g. in 人々, ひ → び) and *gemination* (consonant lengthening, i.e. the っ, e.g. in 刻々), and
2. the repetition must be within a single word/phrase.

If the above aren't satisfied:
- If repetition isn't repetition of the same morpheme, for disambiguation the second 漢字 is spelt out in 平仮名 (e.g. 日にち).
- If repetition crosses word boundaries, then the 漢字 is repeated (e.g. 民主主義, democracy).

  There are exceptions to this! 民主々義 is rarely used but exists. A notable exception is in the signages for neighbourhood associations 「〜町内会」. Because the name of neighbourhoods often end in 〜町, suffixing with 〜町内会 yields 〜町 町内会, which is then informally abbreviated to 〜町々内会, despite the repetition crossing a word boundary.

Intrepretations when 々 is used:
- Reduplication (linguistics terminology) to indicate plurality
  人々 (people)、日々 (daily/day after day)、山々 (mountains)
- Various alterations in meaning

- 個 (piece) → 個々 (individually)
- 時 (time) → 時々 (sometimes)
- 翌日 (next day, as in 隔天/隔一天 (CN)) → 翌々日 (next next day, as in 隔両天 (CN))

Note that 翌日 *is not the same as* 明日*, just like how* 隔天 *and* 明天 *are used in different contexts in CN!*

Repetition marks can be typed using commands in Table 1.

Table 1: Miscellaneous keyboard commands. Today, ゝ, ゞ, ヽ and ヾ only appear in proper names. As examples, じゝ = じし and じゞ = じじ.

		Keyboard command	Purpose
ゝ	ゝ	onaji → space*	平仮名 previous character repeater (enforce without dakuten)
ゞ	ゞ	onaji → space*	平仮名 previous character repeater (enforce with dakuten)
ヽ	ヽ	onaji → space*	片仮名 previous character repeater (enforce without dakuten)
ヾ	ヾ	onaji → space*	片仮名 previous character repeater (enforce with dakuten)
々	々	noma → space*	漢字 previous character repeater (ノ ＋ マ)

G1.3 漢字

Some preliminary notes:

- There exists over 40000 漢字 but only about 2000 account for >95% of characters actually used in written text.
- There are no spaces in Japanese, so 漢字 is necessary for distinguishing separate words within a sentence, and discriminating between homophones.
- Words that mean practically the same thing can have different 漢字 to distinguish nuances.

  Here's an example:
  - 訊く means to ask.
  - 聞く means to listen, or to ask.
  - 聴く means to listen attentively. Preferred when talking about listening to music.

  Another example:
  - 見る means to see.
  - 観る means to watch a movie.

  Another example:
  - 書く means to write.
  - 描く means to draw.

  When depicting/imagining an <u>abstract</u> image (e.g. a scene in a book), we use 描く.

  Another example:
  - The different pronuncations 今日, 今日 and 今日 are each preferred in different contexts.

G1.4 Pronunciation

It is not practical to memorise or attempt to logically create rules for pitches, especially since it can change depending on the context or the dialect. Even the intonations provided in dictionaries are there for guidance; they morph when used in different contexts.

The only practical approach is to get the general sense of pitches is by mimicking native Japanese speakers with careful listening and practice.

Some special notes:

- Voiced consonants vibrate the vocal cords, while unvoiced consonants don't (see Tofugu article).

- In the modern 東京 dialect, ず and づ are pronounced exactly the same way: "zu", as expressed in their identical Hepburn romanisation (§G1.5).

- When in the middle of words, がぎぐげご may be pronounced with a "ng-" start instead of a "g-" start. This is a regional variation (that's not too uncommon); both ways are acceptable (see Tofugu article).

- The native Japanese speaker will pronounce the "v" family (ヴ、ヴァ、ヴィ、ヴェ、ヴォ、ヴュ) as /b/.

- Vowel extensions (§G1.4.1) are pronounced as vowel extensions; do not pronounce the extender if it's a different vowel! For example, 先生 is pronounced *sen-se* with an elongated trailing "e" vowel. There is no "i" vowel sound!

- Almost every 漢字 character has two different readings (see §G1.7):
  ‣ 音読み: Chinese-derived. Used in compound 漢字 and idioms (both known as 熟語).
  ‣ 訓読み: native Japanese. Used in solo 漢字, solo 漢字 appended with 送り仮名, adjectives and verbs.

  The purpose of trailing 送り仮名 is to preserve the pronunciation of the 漢字, even as the word is conjugated[1] to different forms. It is also used to differentiate transitive and intransitive verbs (§G2.7.1).

  Note that although sometimes you may see 音読み pronunciations written in 片仮名 and 訓読み pronunciations written in 平仮名, this is only used in dictionaries for differentiation. In standard 振り仮名, only 平仮名 is used.

- The actual readings of 漢字 can change slightly in compound words to make them easier to say (e.g. 一本 is いっぽん instead of いっほん).

  When repeating 漢字 using 々, *rendaku* (see §G1.6; unvoiced consonant becomes voiced, i.e. the dakuten, e.g. in 人々, ひ → び) and *gemination* (consonant lengthening, i.e. the っ, e.g. 刻々) *may* occur.

G1.4.1 Vowel extension

Vowel extensions follow the rules in Table 2. For notes on pronunciation, see §G1.4.

Table 2: Vowel extension rules. Exceptions are bracketed in blue. /a/ is the phoneme representation.

---

[1]**Conjugation**: change of word form to fit a given context.

Vowel to extend	Extend by appending		Example
	平仮名	片仮名	
/a/	あ		おば<u>あ</u>さん、おか<u>あ</u>さん
/i/	い		
/u/	う	ー	
/e/	い (え)		先生、学生、(おね<u>え</u>さん)
/o/	う (お)		きょう、おは<u>よう</u>、(お<u>お</u>きい)、(<u>遠</u>回り)

G1.5 Hepburn romanisation

Read main article on Wikipedia.

The official (as of Jan 2024) romanisation system of Japan. There are only a few rules.

Vowel extension (§G1.4.1) When vowels "a", "e", "o", "u" are extended <u>as part of the same morpheme</u>, it is expressed with a macron (overbar), and the extender vowel is dropped.
Extension of "i" and the "e+i" combination are exceptions: they remain repeated.
- お<ruby>婆<rt>ばあ</rt></ruby>さん obaasan → obāsan
- <ruby>新潟<rt></rt></ruby> (city name) niigata
- <ruby>数学<rt>すうがく</rt></ruby> suugaku → sūgaku
- お<ruby>姉<rt>ねえ</rt></ruby>さん oneesan → onēsan
  <ruby>先生<rt></rt></ruby> sensei
- <ruby>遠回<rt>とおまわ</rt></ruby>り toomawari → tōmawari
  <ruby>勉強<rt></rt></ruby> benkyou → benkyō

This does not apply when the repetition crosses word boundaries or morpheme boundaries.
- <ruby>邪悪<rt>じゃあく</rt></ruby> jaaku
- <ruby>灰色<rt>はいいろ</rt></ruby> haiiro
  Also for terminal adjectives (???): いい ii
- <ruby>湖<rt>みずうみ</rt></ruby> mizuumi
  Also for terminal verbs (???): <ruby>食<rt>く</rt></ruby>う kuu (eat)
- <ruby>濡<rt>ぬ</rt></ruby>れ<ruby>縁<rt>えん</rt></ruby> nureen ("open veranda (roofed hallway)")
- <ruby>小躍<rt>こ おど</rt></ruby>り koodori (dance of joy)
  <ruby>仔牛<rt>こ うし</rt></ruby> koushi (calf)
  Also for terminal verbs (???): <ruby>迷<rt>まよ</rt></ruby>う mayou (to get lost)

片仮名 loanwords The macron is used iff 「ー」 is used to extend a vowel.

Japanese words adopted into English Common place names like Tokyo, Kyoto and Osaka, while properly romanised as tōkyō, kyōto and ōsaka, are simply romanised as Tokyo, Kyoto and Osaka.

Particles When は、へ、を are used as particles, they are romanised as wa, e and o respectively.

Syllabic ん ん is romanised as n' (with the apostrophe) if followed immediately by any lone vowel or "y". This is to disambiguate んあ、んい、んう、んえ、んお、んや、んゆ、んよ (n'a, n'i, n'u, n'e, n'o, n'ya, n'yu, n'yo) from な、に、ぬ、ね、の、にゃ、にゅ、にょ (na, ni, nu, ne, no, nya, nyu, nyo) respectively.

Examples: 簡易 kan'i (simple), 信用 shin'yō (trust).
かん に   しんよう

Geminated consonants (っ、ッ) Double the next consonant, except if "ch" is repeated: in that case we use "tch" instead of "cch".

Examples: 抹茶 maccha → matcha, こっち kocchi → kotchi
まっちゃ

G1.6 Rendaku

Read the main articles on Tofugu.

Rendaku occurs when multiple words join together to form one **compound word**, and the initially unvoiced consonant of a second word becomes a voiced consonant. In written form, the second word's first syllable gains a dakuten/handakuten mark. All dakuten/handakuten-marked characters have voiced consonant beginnings (the "p" sound for handakuten-marked characters are considered to be "semi-voiced").

Compound words comprise words that can independently exist as words on their own.

Here are some general rendaku rules, though note that exceptions exist:

- Basic conditions:
    1. Two words come together to form a compound word.
    2. The leading consonant of the second word is unvoiced.
    3. The leading consonant of the second word is one of the four sets of characters that can change into a voiced consonant with dakuten or handakuten ("k", "s", "t", or "h").
    4. Surrounding the leading consonant of the second word are voiced vowels (or sometimes nasals like ん: those do not stop rendaku).

- If the first word ends in つ or ん, the "h" leading consonant of the second word usually rendakus to "p", "b" otherwise by default.
    E.g. 出 + 発 = 出発.
    しゅつ はつ しゅっぱつ
    E.g. 鉛 + 筆 = 鉛筆.
    えん ひつ えんぴつ

- When the second word is of Japanese origin (和語), and the basic conditions above are met, then it undergoes rendaku. When the second word is of Chinese origin or a foreign loanword
    わ ご
    (漢語、外来語), rendaku is *usually* prevented (unless the 漢語 is *vulgarised*, meaning it's
    かん ご がいらい ご
    become so common that it's treated as a 和語 word, which doesn't prevent rendaku).

    This is for avoidance of ambiguity in spoken language: 和語 words mostly start with unvoiced consonants, so rendaku makes it clear that a compound word is used instead of two independent words. 漢語 and 外来語 words can and often start with voiced consonants, so rendaku would cause confusion by morphing rendaku-ed words into another different word.

    A vulgarised exception is 夫婦 + 喧嘩 = 夫婦喧嘩 (喧嘩 is vulgarised). Other vulgarised
    ふうふ けんか ふうふげんか けんか
    words: 会社、写真.
    かいしゃ しゃしん

- When the first word is a 漢語 (in 漢語 + 和語 compound words, where the first element uses the 音読み reading and the second element uses the 訓読み reading), rendaku can be blocked. A notable exmaple is 「大〜」 .
    だい
    In 熟語 compound words where both constituent words use 音読み, rendaku does not occur
    じゅく ご
    in the grand majority of cases.

- Lyman's Law: If the second word has a voiced consonant or handakuten anywhere in it, rendaku does not occur.

  This may be explained by the observation that two voiced consonants don't appear together side by side in single 和語 words or phrases.

  "Lyman's Law in reverse" says that sometimes, when the second word has a second voiced consonant, that can become unvoiced and the first consonant becomes voiced (rendaku). This is a rarity and won't be discussed further here.

- If voicing in the first word is too close to the second word, rendaku may (50/50) not occur. "Japanese doesn't really like having a bunch of dakuten and handakuten very close to each other."

- In words that come together to mean "X and Y," rendaku does not occur. In English, such words are rare but examples include "bittersweet", "stir-fry" and "sleepwalk".

  E.g. 山川 can mean either "mountains and rivers" or "a mountain river". For the former, when both sides are "equal status", rendaku does not happen and it is read 山川 (やまかわ). For the latter, when the first word is a noun modifier for the second, rendaku happens and it is read 山川 (やまがわ).

  E.g. 白黒 (しろくろ) does not rendaku (white and black are equals), but 色白 (いろじろ) and 色黒 (いろぐろ) do (colour is a descriptor of white/black).

- Repeating onomatopoeia do not rendaku.

  E.g. キラキラ as the sound of something sparkling/glittering, does not rendaku.

- Certain prefixes block rendaku and certain suffixes resist rendaku.

  Blocking prefixes:
  ‣ 半〜 (はん) (half)
  ‣ 御〜/御〜 (お/み) (honorific)

  E.g. お手洗い (てあらい)、御心 (みこころ)
  ‣ 毎〜 (まい) (every)
  ‣ 一〜 (ひと) (one)
  ‣ 二〜 (ふた) (two)
  ‣ 片〜 (かた) (one-sided)

  E.g. 片仮名 (かたかな) (rendaku blocked) vs. 平仮名 (ひらがな) (rendaku happens).
  ‣ 唐〜 (から) (Chinese)
  ‣ 白〜 (しろ) (white)
  ‣ 黒〜 (くろ) (black)

  Resisting suffixes:
  ‣ 〜先 (さき) (previous/tip)
  ‣ 〜紐 (ひも) (string/cord)
  ‣ 〜浜 (はま) (beach)
  ‣ 〜姫 (ひめ) (princess)
  ‣ 〜煙 (けむり) (smoke)
  ‣ 〜土 (つち) (dirt)
  ‣ 〜潮 (しお) (tide)
  ‣ 〜血 (けつ) (blood)

    ‣ 〜下した (below)

G1.7 音読み and 訓読み and mixing the two

Read the main article on Tofugu1 and Tofugu2.

G1.7.1 History and why 漢字 is the way it is

According to Tofugu, 漢字 was imported from China via religious texts (which the Japanese appreciated a lot). They merged the Chinese writing system into olden Japanese, but olden Japanese was already established and had its own set of pronunciations. The Japanese decided to adopt Chinese orthography, while co-opting both the Chinese-derived pronunciations (音読み) and the native Japanese pronunciations (訓読み).

While 漢字 words adopted in the above manner have both 音読み and 訓読み readings, some 漢字 words used today only have one:

- Those that only have 音読み readings were imported from China wholesale, either because the concept didn't yet exist in Japanese vocabulary, or because there were multiple incompatible native terms for the concept which cannot be unified properly (back then, Japan wasn't one unified country, but comprised unrelated groups with unique systems of government, and presumably sub-languages).

  E.g. 肉にく (meat)、材ざい (lumber)、感かん (feeling)、点てん (point)、医い (doctor)、茶ちゃ (tea)、胃い (stomach)、職しょく (work)、象ぞう (elephant)、秒びょう (time second).

- Those that only have 訓読み readings were invented in Japan for a concept that was native to Japan.

  E.g. 畑はたけ (field)、姫ひめ (princess)、匂におい (fragrant)、峠とうげ (mountain pass)、枠わく (frame)、籾もみ (unhulled rice)、鰯いわし (sardine)、栃とち (horses' chestnut)、込む (to be crowded)、咲く (to bloom).

Furthermore, olden China was always in a state of infighting and changing of powers. As power in China changed, so did the "official" language. The introduction of 漢字 from China to Japan happaned over a long period of time, across many Chinese powers and thus many "then-official" versions of the olden Chinese language. This explains why some 漢字 have multiple 音読み readings: Japanese scholars decided to co-opt them as new readings came, without deprecating the "older" readings. *("There were three major reading adoption periods in the history of the Japanese language:* 呉音ごおん *(4–6th century; the Wu Dynasty's pronunciation),* 漢音かんおん *(7–9th century; the Han Dynasty's pronunciation), and* 唐音とうおん *(1185–1573 the modern day Mandarin Chinese" pronunciation).)*

The presence of multiple 訓読み has a different historical explanation. Spoken Japanese existed before written Japanese. Multiple similar "senses" of a concept (e.g. to raise, to rise, to climb) have different pronunciations in spoken language, but were gathered under the same orthography when the written language was developed (e.g. 「上〜」).

G1.8 When to use 音読み and 訓読み

- (lone 訓読み 漢字: majority) These comprise majority of beginner words found in textbooks. Mostly nouns. 訓読み is used.

- (lone 音読み 漢字: minority) These are characters with significant meaning, and includes things like counters and single 漢字 numbers. 音読み is used.

- (音読み 漢字 compounds: majority; 熟語) These are compound 漢字 words without any trailing 送り仮名. All the constituent 漢字 have Chinese origins and thus 音読み is used.

- (訓読み 漢字 compounds: minority) These are a special class of compound 漢字 and comprise nature concepts (especially the very Japanese ones) and cardinal directions. 訓読み is used for all the constituent 漢字.

- (訓読み 漢字 with trailing 送り仮名) Mostly adjectives and verbs, with the occasional nouns. When trailing 送り仮名 are present, 訓読み is used most of the time.

- (重箱読み 漢字 compounds) These compound 漢字 words take words with mixed origins: the first Chinese-derived and the second Japanese-derived. The first word takes 音読み, the second word takes 訓読み.

  E.g. 金色 (gold colour).

- (湯桶読み 漢字 compounds) These compound 漢字 words take words with mixed origins: the first Japanese-derived and the second Chinese-derived. The first word takes 訓読み, the second word takes 音読み.

  E.g. 場所 (place), 合気道 (martial arts Aikido).

- (当て字 I: borrow Chinese reading, <u>invent</u> meaning) Part of the precursor to modern-day 平仮名 and 片仮名: 万葉仮名. This archaic orthographic system used (multiple) Chinese characters to represent each Japanese sound.

  E.g. 亜米利加 (America; today we use 米国 or アメリカ), 仏蘭西 (France; today we use 仏国 or フランス), 寿司 (sushi), 亜細亜 (Asia; today we use アジア), 珈琲 (coffee; today we use コーヒー), 流石 (as expected; today we use さすが), 沢山 (many; today we use たくさん).

- (当て字 II: borrow Chinese meaning, <u>invent</u> reading) These were adopted when a concept could not yet be expressed directly in the adopted Chinese orthography at the time, but when broken down into simpler concepts, can be expressed using Chinese orthography at the time. The pronunciation follows neither 音読み nor 訓読み of the borrowed Chinese orthography, but instead how the concept would be pronounced in spoken Japanese at the time (that does not later fall into 訓読み).

  E.g. 煙草 (Tobacco (smoke + grass); today we use タバコ), 台詞 (speech; today we use セリフ), 南瓜 (Japanese squash/pumpkin; today we use かぼちゃ), 海老 (shrimp; today we use エビ), 海苔 (Japanese seaweed; today we use のり).

- (当て字 III: borrow both Chinese meaning and the associated reading) Sometimes Japanese scholars were able to find Chinese orthography whose meaning and reading were both desired when representing a concept. These are happy coincidences, perhaps.

  E.g. 合羽 (raincoat; today we use カッパ), 倶楽部 (club; today we use クラブ), 算盤 (abacus; today we use そろばん), 剃刀 (razor; today we use カミソリ), 田舎 (countryside).

Honestly, any time you see pronunciations that don't fall under 音読み or 訓読み, it's safe to assume they're under 当て字, where things are borrowed and crafted from somewhere else; it's a bit unclear and the concept is probably even more complicated than what Tofugu presents (which is an incomplete overview): some of the pronunciations in 当て字 III come from nowhere.

- (lone 外来語 漢字) These are foreign loanwords that attained their own 漢字. These are units of measure (e.g. metric system) and common words. These readings have been adopted into 訓読み.

  E.g. 米 (metres; today we use メートル or メートル), 頁 (page; today we use ページ or ページ), 零 (zilch; today we use ゼロ).

Finally, there's the bizarre class of Japanese names (名乗り) which we best leave untouched here.

G2 Basic grammar

This section will grant you an overview of basic grammatical structures. The vocabulary associated with this section is fragmented by nature and only present to illustrate the grammatical concepts; vocabulary required for day-to-day conversation is left to §G3.

Some preliminary notes:
- The articles "the" and "a" do not exist in Japanese.
- Japanese does not distinguish between a future action and a general statement (e.g. "I will go to the store" vs. "I go to the store").

G2.1 Building clauses and sentences

Read the main article on Tofugu.

Essential clause elements are necessary parts of any clause. In 日本語, the only essential clause element is the **predicate**, which is the information about the subject (which is often omitted if clear from context). Concretely, the predicate is either a clause-trailing verb (e.g. 「食べる。」 is a complete sentence) or an [implied] state-of-being (e.g. 「学生[だ]。」 is a complete sentence). In contrast, in English, both subject and predicate are essential to every valid clause.

Non-essential clause elements add complexity to the conveyed meaning. There are multiple:

- An **object** is the element of a clause acted upon by a transitive verb (§G2.7.1). It is suffixed by を, the object marker particle.

  *A **direct object** is the person or thing that directly receives the action or effect of the verb. It answers the question "what" or "whom". (**CAUTION**: Using the "The subject verbed what?" as a test for transitivity is **not foolproof** and doesn't always work! It's merely a crutch. This is because certain verbs that are purely transitive in English can be expressed intransitively in Japanese (and vice versa). An **indirect object** answers the question "for what", "of what", "to what", "for whom", "of whom", or "to whom" and accompanies a direct object. (Source)*
  E.g. お寿司を作る。 (Make sushi.)

- A **subject** is the entity that controls the verb in a clause. It is suffixed by が, the subject marker particle.

  E.g. **お父さん**がお寿司を作る。 (My father makes sushi.)

- A **topic**. This is NOT to be confused with a subject. In English. It is suffixed by は, the topic-binding particle. For further details, see §G2.2.
  E.g. **毎週日曜日**はお父さんがお寿司を作る。(Every Sunday, my father makes sushi.; 日曜日: Sunday.)

- An **adverbial** provides information about the circumstances surrounding a sentence, such as the who, what, when, where, why and how. It is suffixed by the に and で particles.

  E.g. 毎週日曜日はお父さんが**台所**でお寿司を作る。(Every Sunday, my father makes sushi in the kitchen.; 台所: kitchen.)

- A sentence final particle is adds nuance to the sentence. の adds an explanatory nuance (§G2.10.4). よ adds a informational nuance (§G2.12). ね adds an agreement-expecting nuance (§G2.12).

E.g. *毎週日曜日はお父さんが台所でお寿司を作るの*。(Every Sunday, my father makes sushi in the kitchen.)

Japanese is primarily an SOV language, but this order is fluid and can be switched up to convey different emphases. We may bring parts-of-speech forwards to the beginning of sentences for emphasis. We may bring parts-of-speech backwards to the end of sentences to tuck away and de-emphasise information. This is possible due to the case-marking particles.

Complex sentences can be formed by linking clauses using **conjunctive particles** (e.g. から (therefore), ので, けど, なら), which makes the connection (e.g. the therefore relationship) more explicit, or the **conjugation** of verbs and い-adjectives (e.g. the て form), which de-emphasises the connection. Apart from linking clauses, **embedding clauses** is also possible, typically used via **direct quotation** (using optional 「」 marks, or 〜と言いました (said)。), **indirect quotation** (using 〜と思う; the と particle acts like a spoken quotation mark) and **noun modification by adjective-clauses**.

G2.2 Topics vs. subjects: は、が particles

(Read discussion on Reddit, and Tofugu pages for clauses and sentences, は, が, and their differences.)

G2.2.1 Subject as part-of-speech, topic as meta-concept

The subject and topic of a sentence is hard to distinguish from an English perspective, since in English, the subject is also the topic by default. However, in Japanese, they are not necessarily the same. Whereas the subject can change from clause to clause, the topic can remain the same across numerous clauses (spanning a phrase, sentence or even paragraph). Note that the topic is not a grammatical part-of-speech! The topic is the theme of discourse.

G2.2.2 は particle: the topic marker

は roughly translates to "as for" in English, but is used far more often than "as for".

は **casts** <u>focus</u>/**spotlight on a topic**, and **implicitly conveys the idea that other potential topics are cast aside**. This strength of this **implicit contrast** depends on context and usage, specifically how unusual it is to see は used in place of case-marking particles. Here is an illustration of the implicit contrast:
- コーヒーを飲みますか？ The を particle singles out coffee as the object (which the verb 飲み acts upon) of the question.
- コーヒーは飲みますか？ The は particle shines the spotlight on coffee, but implies the existence of other drinks. The speaker may be talking about other drinks, then moved the conversation to coffee. The speaker may want to offer coffee but imply the availability of other options.

The topic is <u>always</u> something already in the listener's consciousness. Therefore, in clauses containing は, emphasis is placed on the new information following the particle は.

Here are its various purposes:

は as a topic marker Suffixed to a noun-phrase which is the intended topic.

Examples (topic is bolded):
- **日本語**は面白い。 (Japanese is interesting.)

- **これ**は何ですか？ (What's this?; なに is known from context; "this")
- 夏^{なつ}は日本へ行^いくつもりです。(I plan to go to Japan in the sunmmer.; つもり: plan/ intention; the speaker assumed that the listener doesn't know that they were planning to go to Japan.)

日本へ行くのはいつですか？ (When is it that you're going to Japan?; の turns the verb into a noun-phrase; いつ: when)

は for contrasting two topics This happens when two (or more) topics are used in the same sentence.

Examples (topic is bolded):
- E.g. **東京**は物価^{ぶっか}が高^{たか}いけど、**田舎^{いなか}**は物価が安^{やす}い。(Tokyo has a high cost of living, but the countryside has a low cost of living.; 物価: cost of living; 田舎: countryside; 安い: cheap).
- E.g. **お肉**は食べないけど、**魚**は食べるよ。 (I don't eat meat, but I do eat fish.)

If the effect of contrast isn't required, then が is usually used instead:
- E.g. 東京が物価^{ぶっか}が高^{たか}い。 (The cost of living of Tokyo is high.)
- E.g. お肉は食べない。 (I don't eat meat, (but…))

は in middle of negative い-adjectives to add implicit/explicit nuance/spotlight The added nuance is like that of "while"/"although"/"that's not the whole story", and the clause containing は X い is typically followed by a clause adding continuation (though not compulsory, if the nuance's content is implied).

E.g. 日本語は難^{むずか}しくない。 (Japanese is not difficult.)
E.g. 日本語は難しく**は**ない[けど、ただ時間がかかる]。(It's not (exactly) difficult, it's just time-consuming.; かかる: take a resource)
E.g. 日本語は難しく**は**ありませんか、時間がかかります。(It's not (exactly) difficult, it's just time-consuming.; formal language)
E.g. 日本語は難しく**は**あるけど、面白い。(It is difficult, but it's also fun.; ある: exist, opposite of ない)

は in middle of negative nouns and な-adjectives to add implicit/explicit nuance/ spotlight Similar effect to the above.
E.g. 有名^{ゆうめい}**では**ない[が、人気^{にんき}はある]。 (They're not (exactly) famous, but they are popular.; 有名: famous; 人気: popularity; They're not exactly famous, but they are popular.)

E.g. 先生**では**ありませんが、説明^{せつめい}が上手^{じょうず}な人です。 (They're not (actually) a teacher, but they are really good at explaining things.)

人気 is a noun that is typically used as 人気がある or 人気がない. 人気じゃない is possible, means the same thing, but is colloquial.

These are examples of the **compound particle** では.

は incompatible with question words, but commonly used in answers は cannot be suffixed to question words like 誰, 何 and どこ (except special circumstances). The topic is always something that is already in the listener's consciousness: it isn't unknown! Instead, question words are suffixed by が, を, etc. depending on their role in the sentence.

It is however common to answer such questions は to establish the now known topic.

E.g. 誰がいましたか？ (Who was there?)

E.g. 誰が山田さんですか？山田さんはあの人です。 (Who is Yamada-san? That's Yamada-san.)

は suffix in compound particles to add implicit/explicit nuance/spotlight When forming compound particles, は cannot be suffixed to も, が or を.

- は can either "replace" に or become には.

  E.g. 日本に行ったことがある。 (I've been to Japan; neutral statement.)

  E.g. 日本[に]は行ったことがある。(I've been to Japan; + implicit comparison with other countries, perhaps I've never been to those.) (は is more casual than には.)

  E.g.台所で犬が吠えています。 (The dog is barking in the kitchen; neutral statement.)

  E.g. 台所では犬が吠えています。 (The dog is barking in the kitchen; + implicit comparison with other locations.)

  E.g. 弟と映画館に行きました。(I went to the movies with my younger brother; neutral statement.)

  E.g. 弟とは映画館に行きました。 (I went to the movies with my younger brother; with focus cast on brother, and implicit nuance that we don't know who else I did or didn't go with.)

は to convey hesitation Usually prefixed to ね to form the compound particle はね in such scenarios.

  E.g. お寿司は[ね]… (Hmm, sushi…)

は for changing scenes The speaker can intentionally break the conversation's storyline or momentum to emphasise something. This is done by repeating and re-shining the spotlight on the topic, even though it's already obvious to the listener.

  E.g. 昨日はお兄ちゃんが勉強を教えてくれた。まず、英語の勉強を教えてくれて、それから国語の勉強だった。でも、算数の宿題をしている途中に、お兄ちゃんはゲームを始めた。 (Yesterday, my big brother helped me study. To start with, he helped me with English, and then with Japanese. But he started playing a game while we were in the middle of doing my math homework; focus/topic shifted from brother teaching to brother playing game.)

Softening implicit comparison with comma 、 (in writing only) This is commonly done with time phrases such as 来週、先月、今年.

  E.g. 今年、日本に行くんです。 (This year I'm going to Japan.)

  E.g. 日本語、面白い。 (Japanese is interesting.)

  E.g. 少し、食べました。(I ate a little.)

Note that は is NOT a case-marking particle, whose job is to mark the grammatical role an element plays in a sentence. Instead, it binds a sentence to some known context. *"は tells us nothing about the grammatical role the item it marks plays in a sentence, it only establishes that item as the context under which the rest of the sentence holds true. So any word or phrase can become the topic, <u>regardless</u> of whatever grammatical role it plays otherwise. So the topic can be the subject, or the topic can be the direct object, or the topic can be the indirect object, or an adverb, etc. <u>The topic can be anything.</u>"*

Also note that は cannot be used in adjective phrases if there is no contrast involved:

- ジェニー[の/が/は]落ちた学校に私は受かった。(I was accepted by the school that Jenny failed to get into.)
- ジェニー[の/が]落ちた学校にわたしも落ちた。(は is illegal here because there is no contrast!)

G2.2.3 が particle

Read the main article on Tofugu.

が is simply the grammatical subject marker particle. が is suffixed to noun phrases. It "points a finger at" the subject of a sentence, and implicitly puts emphasis on that subject (making it clear nothing else is the subject).

E.g. あの犬[が]吠えた。(That dog barked.)

E.g. 誰か[が]いる。(Someone's here.)

E.g. この納豆[が]おいしい。(This natto is delicious.)

The subject is often omitted if clear. In fact, inclusion of the subject in cases where it's usually omitted brings about a kind of emphasis (e.g. "Did our dog do something to you? *Your* dog barked.").

Sometimes, が itself is omitted instead, especially in spoken context. There is no change to the level of emphasis. This is up to personal preference. <u>However</u>, if the clause carries the meaning of singling out a particular member from a crowd, then が cannot be omitted: ジェニーが犯人だ。

G2.3　Prelude: Basic grammatical structures

Conjugation is the change in **verb** or **い-adjective** form to fit contexts.

- うん、ううん: informal yes/no
- でも: but

G2.4　Expressing state-of-being

There is no "to be" (is, are, was, were, am) in Japanese.

- だ: declarative/assertive present state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.

  An "assertive" marker. Using it without a communicative particle like よ or ね would sound standoff-ish and abrupt (i.e. rude) in spoken Japanese. A sentence ending with だ wouldn't sound like something that's used in an actual conversation, and is only natural in select cases:

  ‣ inside of indirect quotations (when paraphrasing what someone else said).

  E.g. 人間は火星に住めないと思う。(I don't think that humans can live on Mars.)

  E.g. 近所の人から桜が満開だと教えてもらった。(A neighbour told me that the cherry blossoms were in full bloom.)

  ‣ when you find or notice something

  E.g. あ、[雪/雨/虹]だ！ (Ah, it's snowing/a rainbow!)

  E.g. あ、電話だ。 (Ah, it's my phone.)

  ‣ when you feel strongly about something

E.g. 有名なアイドルのこと写真撮ったん**だ**！ (I took a picture with a famous idol! 撮る: to take a picture, variant of 取る.)

E.g. 本当**だ**！ (It's true!)

E.g. はあ、明日は漢字のテスト**だ**。 (Ahh, there is a Kanji test tomorrow.)

- じゃない: negative present state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.

- だった: past state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.

- じゃなかった: negative past state-of-being, suffixed to nouns and な-adjectives only.

E.g. 元気？元気[だ]。 (Greeting and response)

E.g. 元気じゃない / 元気だった / 元気じゃなかった。

G2.5 Starter particles は、も、が

For は and が, see §G2.2.

- は: introductory topic marker "as for/about", suffixed to the topic you're introducing.

  Unless you're making a comparison, you usually do not use more than one は in a sentence (see discussion on StackOverflow).

  E.g. アリス**は**学生？うん、学生。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, I am.)

  E.g. 今日**は**試験だ。ジョン**は**？ジョン**は**明日。 (Today is exam. What about John? His exam is tomorrow.)

- も: inclusive topic marker ("also"), suffixed to the topic you're including.

  E.g. アリスは学生？うん、トム**も**学生。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, and Tom is a student too.)

  E.g. アリスは学生？うん、でもトムは学生じゃない。 (Alice, are you a student? Yeah, but Tom is not a student.; it is incorrect to use も here, as it is not inclusive with the positive state-of-being!)

  E.g. アリスは学生？ううん、トム**も**学生じゃない。 (Alice, are you a student? Nope, and Tom is also not a student.)

- が: identifier/subject marker "the one", suffixed to a question or the identified. Used when the topic is unknown, and you are either asking for what the topic is, or identifying what the topic is.

  E.g. 誰**が**学生？ 私**が**学生。 (Who the one student? Me the one student.)

G2.6 Adjectives

Adjectives (adjective phrases) modify a noun that comes after it.

- な-adjectives: act like nouns and use the same particle rules as in §G2.5. Use な to directly modify the noun that comes after な, only in the present-positive case.

  E.g. 静かな人、きれいな人。 (Quiet person, pretty person.)

  E.g. 友達は親切。 (Friend is kind.) 友達は親切な人だ。 (Friend is kind person).

E.g. ボブは何が好き[じゃない/だった/じゃなかった]？(What does/doesn't/did/didn't Bob like?) ボブは魚が好き[だ/じゃない/だった/じゃなかった]。(Bob likes/doesn't like/liked/ didn't like fish.)

E.g. 魚が[好き**な**/好きじゃない/好きだった/好きじゃなかった]人。(Person that likes/does not like/liked/did not like fish.) The entire clause before 人 is an adjective.

E.g. 魚が好きじゃない人は、肉が好きだ。(Person who doesn't like fish likes meat.)\ E.g. 魚が好きな人は、野菜も好きだ。(Person who likes fish also likes wild vegetables.)

- い-adjectives: always end with 平仮名「い」that is <u>not</u> part of a 漢字 word's pronunciation: it must literally be a 平仮名「い」. As examples, 好き、きれい（綺麗）、きらい（嫌い）are all not い-adjectives; they are な-adjectives. 嫌い being a な-adjective has to do with 嫌い being derived from the verb 嫌う. REVISIT FUTURE

Do not attach the だ suffix to い-adjectives, just as you don't use だ with じゃない。な is not applicable for い-adjectives: there is no need for any attachments.

E.g. 値段が高いレストランは**あまり好きじゃない**。(I **don't really** like expensive restau-rants.)[2]

Regarding conjugation, one い-adjective family is an exception: いい. Historically, the word for good changed over time from 良い to いい, but conjugations are still take 良い as the base. Same applies to 格好いい, which takes 格好良い as the base.

Table 3 shows the conjugations and usage syntax for な- and い- adjectives.

Table 3: Adjective conjugations. I purposely use よかった instead of 良かった (and their variants) here to show that you can use either; it's up to personal preference. I personally prefer the use of 漢字 (i.e. 良かった) because it can be more specific and it's easier to read (in that at a glance, it's easier to derive meaning from 漢字's widely varying word shapes, compared to a sea of 平仮名 characters). Note however that 良い is usually written in 仮名 alone when used as part of conjugations, as in this table.

	Positive	Negative
Present	\<na-adj\>な\<nn\>	\<na-adj\>じゃない\<nn\>
	\<i-adj root\>い \<nn\>	\<i-adj root\>くない \<nn\>
	いい \<nn\>	よくない \<nn\>
	かっこいい \<nn\>	かっこよくない \<nn\>
Past	\<na-adj\>だった\<nn\>	\<na-adj\>じゃなかった\<nn\>
	\<i-adj root\>かった \<nn\>	\<i-adj root\>くなかった\<nn\>
	よかった \<nn\>	よくなかった\<nn\>
	かっこよかった \<nn\>	かっこよくなかった \<nn\>

G2.7 Verbs

Read the main article regarding verb classes and conjugations on Tofugu.

---

[2]**あまり** is typically used as an intensifier modifier for *negative* adjectives: "don't really, 25-50%". It can also be used as a modifier for positive adjectives, excessive", but in those cases it must be trailing: 食べるあまり、悲しさのあまり。(MT)

Verbs always come at the end of clauses.

Verbs are categorised into three groups, as shown in Table 4. Be flexible: all these terms are used in different textbooks and dictionaries. Thankfully, they are easy to remember, along with the observation that there are way more Group I verbs than Group II verbs, and there are only two Group III verbs (or up to a dozen, depending on how you count them).[3]

Table 4: Verb classifications. *There isn't a Japanese term for exception verbs; する and 来る are the only members of the 不規則動詞 subclass.

	Group 1	**Group 2**	**Group 3**
Synonyms	Pentagrade verb 五段動詞	Monograde verb 一段動詞	Irregular verb 不規則動詞*
	Godan verb	Ichidan verb	Special class
	Group I verb	Group II verb	Group III verb
	う-verb	る-verb	Exception verb
	Consonant-root/stem verb	Vowel-root/stem verb	-

In a nutshell, **る-verbs is the class of** *almost all* **-iru/-eru verbs**. Exceptions include 帰る、切る、知る which are う-verbs.

Conjugations for verbs are the most complicated among all parts-of-speech, and are shown in Table 6.

The reason for the class names are as such:

- う-verbs all end with the 〜う sound. As う-verbs conjugate, the ending 〜う sound shifts through all five vowels 〜あ (negative)、〜い (polite)、〜う (dict)、〜え (potential)、〜お (volitional), thus the name 五段 (five-level).

  Conjugation of verbs occurs at the phonological level (sounds of the language), which transcends the abilities of the orthography. The **root/stem** of verbs stops at the terminal consonant, thus the name consonant-root/stem. (E.g. the root of 聞く is /kik/ and this remains unchanged through conjugations!)

- る-verbs all end with the る character. As る-verbs conjugate, the る character is replaced for other endings. The **root/stem** (the part before the る ending) remains unchanged through conjugations and doesn't cycle through the five vowels, thus the name 一段 (one-level). The root/stem stops at the terminal vowel, thus the name vowel-root/stem. (E.g. the root of 食べる is /tabe/ and this remains unchanged through conjugations!)

Since there is no consensus on the definitions of root/stem, I'll use "root" to refer to /kik/, and "stem" to refer to the stem form 聞き.

G2.7.1 Transitive and intransitive verbs

Read the main article on Tofugu.

A **transitive verb** takes a direct object, while an **intransitive verb** does not take a direct object. *A **direct object** is the person or thing that directly receives the action or effect of the*

---

[3]Mnemonic I'm using: Group I is the most superior; 五段 is superior to 一段; う comes before る in the 平仮名 alphabet chart.

*verb. It answers the question "what" or "whom". (**CAUTION**: Using the "The subject verbed what?" as a test for transitivity is **not foolproof** and doesn't always work! It's merely a crutch. This is because certain verbs that are purely transitive in English can be expressed intransitively in Japanese (and vice versa). An **indirect object** answers the question "for what", "of what", "to what", "for whom", "of whom", or "to whom" and accompanies a direct object.}* (Source)

Some verbs have two forms: transitive and intransitive. These two forms sometimes have different pronunciations. I guess it comes down to experience. Examples shown in Table 5.

There are no easy tricks to tell whether a verb is transitive or not. There are no simple rules that say a particular 送り仮名 implies a certain transitivity. Japanese verbs are a mess!

DO NOT confuse transitivity with passiveness. English dictionaries like to define verbs using the "to …" construct, and this is carried over to English-Japanese dictionaries. Intransitive verbs are *often* defined using passive voice, but

$$\text{passive voice} \nRightarrow \text{verb is intransitive}$$

$$\text{verb is intransitive} \nRightarrow \text{passive voice}$$

A counterexample to the first implication is "The apple was eaten.". Here, "eat" is transitive (the direct object is the apple, and the subject, now oblique/non-obligatory, is omitted)! A counterexample to the second implication is "I slept". Here, "sleep" is intransitive, and active voice is used.

Thus we can't use the passive voice as a marker for intransitivity. In fact, in Japanese, the passive voice has a conjugation of its own, which applies for both transitive and intransitive verbs (yes, intransitive verbs in Japanese can take passive voice too, §G4.1.2). Take special care NOT to interpret the passive voice "to be …" (endemic to English definitions) in §GA.1.4 as equivalent to intransitivity. **Transitivity and passiveness are intertwined (SL) but remain independent concepts.**

In fact, in English only and not in Japanese, the converse of the two implications above are true, because intransitive verbs do not have a passive form, due to the lack of objects (and thus no object to promote to subject role, which is part of passivisation).

$$\text{passive voice} \Rightarrow \text{verb is transitive}$$

$$\text{verb is intransitive} \Rightarrow \text{active voice}$$

(In fact these two are now contrapositives, i.e. they convey the same meaning.)

Table 5: Example transitive verbs and their intransitive counterparts.

Transitive	Meaning	Intransitive	Meaning
起こす	to pick up	起きる	to rise
落とす	to drop	落ちる	to fall
入れる	to put in	入る	to enter/go in
出す	to take out	出る	to exit/come out
開ける	to open	開く	to open
閉める	to close	閉まる	to close
つける	to turn on (lights/appliance)	つく	to turn on (lights/appliance)

Transitive	Meaning	Intransitive	Meaning
消す	to turn off (lights/appliance)	消える	to turn off (lights/appliance)
刺す	to pierce	刺さる	to pierce
抜く	to pull out/extract	抜ける	to fall out/extract

G2.8 Nouns, adjectives, verbs conjugation summary

Table 6 shows all the conjugation rules we've seen so far.

Table 6: Basic conjugation rules, for nouns, adjectives and verbs. [] means optional; 「」 is a dictionary-form placeholder; green means additive (without modifying the dictionary-form); blue means substitutive (modifies the dictionary-form); red means exception.

Category	Positive		Negative		Examples
	Present	Past	Present	Past	
Noun/な-adjective	「」[だ]	「」だった	「」じゃない	「」じゃなかった	学生、友達
な-adjective	「」な	「」だった	「」じゃない	「」じゃなかった	元気、綺麗、好き、嫌い
い-adjective	「」い	「」かった	「」くない	「」くなかった	嬉しい、気持ち悪い、難しい
	いい	よかった	よくない	よくなかった	
	かっこいい	かっこよかった	かっこよくない	かっこよくなかった	
う-verb	「」す	「」した	「」さない	「」さなかった	話す、出す
	「」く	「」いた	「」かない	「」かなかった	聞く、書く、描く
	行く	行った	行かない	行かなかった	
	「」ぐ	「」いだ	「」がない	「」がなかった	泳ぐ
	「」む	「」んだ	「」まない	「」まなかった	飲む、読む、盗む
	「」ね	「」んだ	「」なない	「」ななかった	死ね
	「」ぶ	「」んだ	「」ばない	「」ばなかった	遊ぶ
	「」る	「」った	「」らない	「」らなかった	知る、切る、帰る、走る、降る
	ある	あった	ない	なかった	
	「」つ	「」った	「」たない	「」たなかった	待つ
	「」う	「」った	「」わない	「」わなかった	買う、会う
る-verb	「」る	「」た	「」ない	「」なかった	いる、食べる、出る、見る*
Exception verb	「」する	「」した	「」しない	「」しなかった	勉強する、楽しみにする、質問をする
	来る	来た	来ない	来なかった	

G2.9 Verb particles を、に、へ、で

- を: direct object marker, suffixed to the target object <u>of transitive verbs</u>.

  E.g. 魚を食べる。(Eat fish.)

  E.g. ジュースを飲んだ。(Drank juice.)

  Direct objects can be **places** in Japanese too, since the motion verb is done *to* the place. This is the only exception where を can be used for intransitive verbs. <location>を<motion verb> expresses the meaning that the motion verb is performed to traverse the location.

  E.g. 街をぶらぶら歩く。(Aimlessly walk through town.; ぶらぶら: aimlessly, 歩く: walk (intransitive)).

  E.g. 高速道路を走る。(Run through expressway.; 走る: run (intransitive))

  Invisible を in <noun>をする: する (do) can be suffixed to nouns, and the を while technically needed, is optional.

  E.g. 毎日、日本語を勉強[を]する。(Study Japanese everyday.; 勉強[を]する)

E.g. メールアドレスを登録[を]した。(Registered email address.; 登録[を]する)

- に: target marker, suffixed to the <u>target</u> (physical or abstract) of any verb (transitive or non-transitive). The target is <u>emphasised as the final destination</u>. The notion of a "target" is not restricted to motion verbs; the <u>location of objects</u> is the target of the verbs for existence (あ る and いる); <u>time</u> (e.g. today, last week) is also a common target.

  % E.g. ボブは日本に行った。(Bob went to Japan.)

  E.g. 家に帰らない。(Not go back home.; 家 means home, 家 means own home.)

  % E.g. 部屋に来る。(Come to room.)

  E.g. 椅子が台所にあった。(Chair was in the kitchen.)

  E.g. 猫は部屋にいる。(Cat is in room.)

  E.g. いい友達に会った。(Met good friend; past tense of 会う.)

  E.g. ジムは医者になる。(Jim will become doctor; なる: become)

  E.g. 先週に図書館に行った。(Went to library last week.)

  When suffixed to time, に is not always required. Its presence emphasises a "promise" element to the target. To remove this emphasis, use 「、」 instead.

  E.g. 友達は、来年[、 /に]日本に行く。 (Friend go to Japan next year.)

  To mean "from", use the 「**から**」 from-marker particle.

  E.g. アリスは、アメリカから来た。(Alice came from America.; past tense of 来る)

  The start and end can be specified with 「**<from>から<to>まで**」.

  E.g. 宿題を今日から明日までする。(cWill do homework from today to tomorrow.)

- へ: direction marker, suffixed to direction of verbs (transitive or non-transitive). Pronounced え. Unlike に, which specifies target/destination, へ specifies the general direction we're heading towards, from the starting point. Also, unlike に, it does not guarantee that the target is the final destination. へ is restricted to verbs with a physical direction (in the physical or abstract sense) like 行く、来る、向かう; verbs like なる (become) have no direction associated with it and so clauses containing なる as the trailing verb cannot use へ!

  E.g. 部屋{に/*へ*}来る。(Come {towards/to} room.)

  E.g. 勝ちへ向かう。(Go towards victory.)

- で: context marker; "by way of". It provides supplementary context: where, what, how.

  E.g. 映画館で見た。(Saw at movie theatre.)

  E.g. バスで帰る。(Go home by bus.)

  E.g. レストランで昼ご飯を食べった。(Ate lunch at restaurant.)

Note that を can only be used with transitive verbs, unless the direct object is the **location** of an intransitive motion verb, as mentioned above when introducing 「を」.

E.g. 私が電気をつけた。(I turned on the lights; past tense of つける)

E.g. 電気を消す。(Turn off the lights.)

E.g. 電気がついた。(The lights turned on; incorrect to use を here as つく is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent)

E.g. 電気が消えた。(The lights turned off; past tense of 消える; incorrect to use を here as 消える is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent)

E.g. 誰が窓を開けた？ (Who opened the window?; 窓: window)

E.g. 窓がどうして開いた？ (Why did the window open?; past tense of 開く; incorrect to use を here as 開く is intransitive and doesn't have any active agent)

E.g. 部屋を出た。(past tense of 出る)

G2.9.1 何で and 何で in questions

"What" is expressed as 何. "Why" is expressed as どうして (proper)、なぜ (forceful/formal)、何で (colloquial). Note that 何で has nothing to do with the で particle; it is a completely separate word.

When asking a question as a speaker, use the correct one: なにで for "what", and なんで for "why". When reading written text, obtain context from the answer. As a general rule of thumb, asking why (なんで) is much more common.

E.g. 何で来た？バスで来た。(Came by way of what? Came by way of bus.) (So in this case, the question is read なにできた？)

E.g. 何で来た？暇だから。(Why did you come? Because I am free.) (So in this case, the question is read なんできた？)

Note that だから here has got nothing to do with から as in "from", we'll see this later in compound sentences (§G3.6.3).

G2.9.2 Compound particles には、にも、へは、へも、では、でも to set location topic

に、へ、で can be suffixed with は/も to set the topic/inclusive topic when the location becomes a topic.

E.g. 学校に行った？行かなかった。図書館には？図書館にも行かなかった。
(Did you go to school? Didn't go. What about library? Also didn't go to library.)

E.g. どこで食べる？イタリアレストランでは思う？ (Eat where? How about Italian restaurant?; 思う: think)

G2.9.3 Particle は to set direct object topic

を cannot form compound particles. To set direct object as topic, simply use は.

E.g. 日本語{を/は}習う。(Learn Japanese.; It is incorrect to use をは; that compound particle doesn't exist.)

G2.10 Noun modification

な-adjectives and い-adjectives can be used to modify a following noun, using "connectors" like {な、じゃない、だった、じゃなかった} and {∅、くない、かった、くなかった} respectively.

Verbs and nouns too can be used to modify a following noun.

G2.10.1 Relative verb clauses as adjectives: verbs modifying following nouns

Relative verb clauses (verb phrases) can be directly used to modify nouns.

- (present-positive) ボブは、**いつも勉強する人**だ。 (Bob is a person who always studies.)
- (present-negative) **赤いズボンを買った友達**はボブだ。 (Friend who buy red pants is Bob.; ズボン: pants)
- (past-positive) **先週に映画を見た人**は誰？ (Who is person who watched movie last week?)
- (past-negative) **晩ご飯を食べなかった人**は、**映画で見た銀行**に行った。(Person who did not eat dinner went to the bank she saw at the movie.)

G2.10.2 Noun chain

A string of present-positive nouns is grammatically correct only if they are not meant to modify each other.

E.g. 国際 教 育センタ (International Education Centre)、登 場 人物 (stage character)、立入禁止 (no entry/trespassing)、通勤手当 (travel allowance).

G2.10.3 Noun phrases as adjectives: nouns modifying following nouns

Present-positive modifiers require noun-related particles (と、や、とか、の, see §G2.10.4). The other three tenses (present-negative, past-positive, past-negative) can directly modify nouns without any additional particle.

- (present-negative) **学生じゃない人**は、学校に行かない。(Person who is not a student do not go to school.)
- (past-positive) **先週医者だったボブ**は、仕事を辞めた。(Bob who was a doctor last week quit his job.)
- (past-negative) **友達じゃなかったアリス**は、いい友達なった。(Alice who was not a friend, became a good friend.)

G2.10.4 Noun-related particles と、や、とか、の

Noun-related particles are used to connect nouns together.

- と: inclusive noun connector (exclusive listing or together-with). It is used *between* nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun. It is similar to 「も」 in terms of inclusivity. It can also be used to show an action was done together with something or someone.

  E.g. 本と雑誌と葉書を買った。(Bought book, magazine and postcard.)

  E.g. 友達と話した。(Talked with friend.)

  E.g. 先生と会った。(Met with teacher.)

- や: noun vague listing connector. Similar to と, it is used *between* nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun, with the implied meaning that the list is non-exhaustive, and some items on the list may not apply. In English, this is like the "and/or, etc." constructs.

  E.g. 飲み物やカップやナプキンは、いらない？ (You don't need (things like) drink, cup, or napkin, etc.?; present-negative of いる as in 要る)

  E.g. 靴やシャツを買う。(Buy shoes and shirt, etc.)
  - とか: vague listing particle (colloquial). Used exactly like や but in informal settings. It is used *between* nouns in a list, not as a marker at the end of each noun.

  E.g. 飲み物とかカップとかナプキンは、いらない？ (You don't need (things like) drink, cup, or napkin, etc.?; present-negative of いる as in 要る)

　　E.g. 靴とかシャツを買う。(Buy shoes and shirt, etc.)

- の: possession marker, generic noun, or explanatory particle. The の particle has three uses:

Possession marker <Owner>の<ownee>. Can refer to hierarchical classifications too.

　　E.g. ボブの本。(Book of Bob).

　　E.g. 本のボブ。(Bob of book; probably a mistake.)

　　E.g. ボブは、アメリカの大学の学生だ。 (Bob is student of college of America.)

The ownee (noun that is modified) may be omitted if clear from context.

　　E.g. そのシャツは誰の[シャツ]?ボブの[シャツ]だ。(Whose shirt is that shirt? It is the shirt of Bob.)

Note that **この、その、あの** are abbreviations of これの、それの、あれの respectively.

Generic noun (nominaliser) The の particle can be suffixed to relative clauses (adjective-phrases and verb-phrases) to represent a generic noun, taking the place of an actual noun. This usage <u>allows us to treat adjectives, adjective-phrases, verbs and verb-phrases as nouns using a の suffix</u>. Then, particles applicable to nouns can be used as a suffix to the noun-phrase: は、も、が、を. Detailed uses are in §G2.10.6.

　　E.g. (な-adjectives) **静かな**のが、アリスの部屋だ。(Quiet one is room of Alice.) (Note that the な cannot be dropped! All previous rules still apply.) 「静かな部屋が、アリスのだ。」 ("The quiet room is Alice's.") is also ok.

　　E.g. (い-adjectives) **白いの**は、かわいい。(Thing that is white is cute.)

　　E.g. (verbs) **毎日勉強するの**は大変。(Studying every day is tough.)

　　E.g. (verbs) **授業に行くの**を忘れた。(Forgot the event of going to class.)

　　E.g. (relative clause) **毎日同じ物を食べるの**は、面白くない。(It's not interesting to eat the same thing every day.)

Alternatively, **物** and **こと** can be used for generic objects and events respectively, instead of の.

　　E.g. **白い物**は、かわいい。 (Thing that is white is cute.)

　　E.g. **授業に行くこと**を忘れた。 (Forgot the thing of going to class.)

Note that in the case of verbs/relative verb clauses (verb phrases), the plain form must be used; the polite 〜ます form is wrong.

　　E.g. お父さんが買ったのは、バナナです。(The thing that dad bought, is a banana.; It is incorrect to use 買いました in place of 買った.)

The nominaliser の can be modified by prefixing the こそあど words (Japanese demonstratives). These are こんな、そんな、あんな、どんな and こういう、そういう、ああいう、どういう (this kind/that kind/that kind/what kind, respectively for both; we use the former set in more emphatic settings and the latter in more literal settings, see discussion on StackOverflow). These correspond to the pronouns これ、それ、あれ、どれ (this, that, that (far), which (between 3 or more))。

　　E.g. **こんなの**要らないよ。(I don't need things like this.)

E.g. **そういうのは**、前もって教えてください。(Please let me know things like that in advance.)

Abstract noun/explanatory　の as a sentence-ending particle conveys an explanatory tone in responses, and explanation-seeking tone in questions. It represents the abstract noun "the thing is…", and is believed to be an abbreviation of 「〜のです」. の can also be used as a suffix to な-adjectives or state-of-being noun-phrases, though in those cases **なの** must be used in order to differentiate it from the possession marker or generic noun purposes of の. One exception to this disambiguating function is な-adjectives: both generic noun and explanatory purposes use 〜なの. **Prefer 〜なん{だ/です} for explanatory.**}

E.g. 今は忙しいの？今は忙しいの[だ]。(Is it that you are busy now? The thing is that I'm busy now.; 忙しい: busy; the absence of the trailing だ in the response is feminine; adult males add the だ in the response; だ cannot be used in the question)

E.g. ジムのだ。(It belongs to Jim.)

E.g. ジム**な**のだ。(It is Jim; with explanatory tone.)

This explanatory tone results in の being used in strong commands, explaining things you should or shouldn't do, or explaining parts of a procedure.

E.g. 授業中は、おしゃべりしないの！(Don't chat during class!; しゃべる: chat)

E.g. まずは、洗うの？ (Do you clean first?) まずは、あらうの[です]。それで、きれいになったら、こうやって切るの[です]。(First, clean it. Then, once it is clean, cut it like this; the 「です」, if dropped, causes the reply to become informal/childish/feminine.)

The の in sentence-end expressions are typically substituted by **ん** as it's easier to say (e.g. のだ → んだ). んだ is however also used with all forms of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, and has its own set of conjugation rules, as shown in Table 7.

E.g. ジム**なんだ**。(It is Jim; with explanatory tone.)

Further examples with polite speech:

E.g. どうして遅れた**{の/ん}**ですか？ (Why were you late?)

E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか？時間がなかった**{の/ん}**です。 (Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの？うん、時間がなかった**{の/のだ/んだ}**。(You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

E.g. 私は学生**な{の/ん}**で、お金がない**ん**です。 (I am a student, therefore I have no money.)

E.g. ここは静か**な{の/ん}**で、とても穏やかです。 (It is quiet here, therefore it is very calm here.)

E.g. **な{の/ん}**で、友達に会う時間がない。(Therefore, there is no time to meet friend.; this omits the reason and thus the な is compulsory, see §G3.6.3)

For verbs, any form is usable (beyond {positive, negative} × {present, past}), except forms like the command form or the volitional form, which do not make sense for explanations. Also, the

polite verb form 「〜ます」 and polite い-adjective form 「〜です」 cannot be used with 「〜ん
だ」; use the plain form. If you want to be polite, use 「〜んです」.

の is used in formal settings and ん in informal settings. The first casual form attaches んだ to
any tense of a noun/adjective/verb; the second casual form attaches んだ to the dictionary-form,
then conjugating the だ. Both casual forms have slightly different nuances.

- の/のだ/のです/んだ/んです: these are simply the sentence-ending explanatory の particle.

- んだった: used to express that you just remembered to do something, typically used with そ
  ういえば.

  E.g. あ、そういえば出かける**んだった**。 (Ah, that reminds me, I am going out.)

- んじゃない/んじゃありません: mildly slang, to prohibit or request that something not be
  done: "don't, mustn't". The latter from is more formal, and used when the speaker wants to
  forbid something but not sound angry (e.g. adult talking to a child).

  E.g. 馬鹿にする**んじゃない**！ (Don't make fun of me!)

  E.g. 嘘をつく**んじゃありません**。 (You shouldn't lie.; 嘘をつく: to lie)

- んじゃなかった: mildly slang, to express nuance of regret/disappointment: "shouldn't have".

  E.g. こんな安い車を買う**んじゃなかった**。(I shouldn't have bought a cheap car like this one.)

  E.g. 食べる**んじゃなかった**。 (Shouldn't have eaten it.)

Read more about these nuances at Sources 1, 2, 3.

Table 7: caption

の Purpose	Category	Dictionary form	Positive		Negative	
			Present	Past	Present	Past
Possession	Noun	「」	「」の[だ]*	「」のだった	「」のじゃない	「」のじゃなかった
Generic noun	な-adjective	「」	「」なの	「」だったの	「」じゃないの	「」じゃなかったの
	い-adjective/verb	「」	「」の	「」<conj>の	「」<conj>の	「」<conj>の
Explanatory	Noun/な-adjective	「」	「」なの[だ]**。	「」だったの[だ]**。	「」じゃないの[だ]**。	「」じゃなかったの[だ]**。
			「」なのです。	「」だったのです。	「」じゃないのです。	「」じゃなかったのです。
			「」なんだ。	「」だったんだ。	「」じゃないんだ。	「」じゃなかったんだ。
			「」なんです。	「」だったんです。	「」じゃないんです。	「」じゃなかったんです。
	い-adjective/verbs	「」	「」の[だ]**。	「」<conj>の[だ]**。	「」<conj>の[だ]**。	「」<conj>の[だ]**。
			「」のです。	「」<conj>のです。	「」<conj>のです。	「」<conj>のです。
			「」んだ。	「」<conj>んだ。	「」<conj>んだ。	「」<conj>んだ。
			「」んです。	「」<conj>んです。	「」<conj>んです。	「」<conj>んです。
Special	Noun/な-adjective	「」		「」なんだった。	「」なんじゃない。	「」なんじゃなかった。
					「」なんじゃありません。	
	い-adjective/verbs	「」		「」んだった。	「」んじゃない。	「」んじゃなかった。
					「」んじゃありません。	

Read the supplementary んだ (and んです) article on Tofugu, if you need more clarification.

G2.10.5 の particle I: the noun modifier (label maker)

Read the main article on Tofugu.

Applicable schemae:

- <noun label>の[<noun labelled>]. The labelled can be omitted if clear from context. The
  label can be stacked.

  E.g. 私の[車]。

  E.g. 犬のおもちゃの店。 (おもちゃ: toy)

- <particle>の<noun labelled>.
    ‣ への: "to" label. E.g. アメリカへの飛行機。(Airplane bound for America.)
    ‣ からの: "from" label. E.g. アメリカからの飛行機。(Airplane from America.)
    ‣ だけの: "only" label. E.g. 寝るだけの人生。 (A life of only sleeping.)
    ‣ との: "quote" label. E.g. 「早く帰ってきてね！」とのメッセージ。(A message saying "Come back soon!".)

Here are its various purposes. Note that possession isn't the only one!

の as possession marker <owner>の<ownee>.

E.g. 私の母。 (Ny mother.)

の as affiliation marker <affiliation>の<affiliated/position>. Typically used in business settings to show which organisation someone belongs to.

E.g. トーフグのキョーコです。(This is Kyoko from Tofugu.)

E.g. 東京大学の教授。 (Professor at Tokyo university.)

の as "about" marker <about>の<labelled>.

E.g. バナナ[について]の{知識/研究}。(について: regarding; used for disambiguation because バナナの研究 could mean research of someone named バナナ.)

の as location/time label Whereas with the に particle we needed to specify a verb after に, with the の particle the location/time is treated as a label for the main noun.

E.g. 朝五時のアラーム。 (The 5am alarm.)

の as "degree" marker This refers to labels indicating amount, quantity, price, size, etc.

E.g. 五十人のアメリカ人。 (Fifty American people.)

E.g. 四千円のマンゴー。 (A four-thousand yen mango.)

の as order/rank marker Things like first, second, third, etc.

E.g. 最初のテスト。 (First test.)

E.g. 世界一の温泉。 (World's number one hot spring.)

の for apposition Apposition: the relationship between different words that mean the same thing.

E.g. フルーツのバナナ。(The fruit, banana.)

E.g. 校長のスズキ先生。(The principal, Suzuki Sensei.)

の as materials/ingredients marker Typically used in menus to indicate ingredients used in dishes.

E.g. アサリの味噌汁。(Miso soup with clam.)

E.g. プラスチックのカップ。(Plastic cup.)

の as a replacement for な for の-adjectives (compared to な-adjectives) Adjective-like nouns like 普通 and 久しぶり take の when modifying nouns.

E.g. 普通の車。 (Normal car.)

E.g. 久しぶりの再会。(long-awaited reunion)

の as a replacement for が in relative clauses Relative clauses are clauses that precede and modify nouns.

For further elaboration on の-adjectives, see §G2.10.7.

E.g. **カナエ{が、の}作ったネックレス**。(The necklace Kanae made.)

G2.10.6 の particle II: the nominaliser

Read the main article on Tofugu.

Basic usage is as in the initial description of の earlier, under "generic noun" and "explanatory". This section covers the various contexts in which we use の to nominalise other parts-of-speech:

Non-physical things の can turn immaterial things like events, ideas, facts, and thoughts (expressed as embedded clauses ending with verbs) into nouns. These are covered under the nominaliser こと.

E.g. **一人でトイレに行った{こと/の}が、よく思い出せない**。(I can't really remember having gone to the bathroom by myself; 思い出す: to recall.)

E.g. **バク転できない{こと/の}が、悔しい**。(I'm frustrated about not being able to backflip; できる: to be able to do.)

Material things の can turn adjective-phrases describing material things into nouns.

E.g. **甘いのが食べたい**。(I want to eat sweet things.)

E.g. **昔飼っていたのは、犬です**。(What I used to have as a pet was a dog; 昔: olden days; 飼う: to keep a pet)

E.g. **そこにいるのは、誰ですか？** (Who's there?)

Time and location の can turn clauses describing time or location of events (expressed as embedded clauses ending with verbs) into nouns. The resultant outer clause often contains elements indicating a particular time or location.

E.g. **スーツケースが届くのは明日です**。(The suitcase will be delivered tomorrow; 届く: to be delivered/arrive)

E.g. **この町が美しかったのは、五十年前です**。(This city was beautiful fifty years ago.)

E.g. **次のオリンピックが開催されるのは東京です**。(The next olympics will be held in Tokyo; 開催する: to host an event)

E.g. **生まれたのはニューヨークです**。(I was born in New York; 生まれる: to be born)

Reason の can be a placeholder for an explanation, similar to its sentence-ending explanatory usage.

E.g. アメリカに住みたいのは、英語の勉強がしたいからです。(The reason why I want to live in the U.S. is because I want to study English; したい: want to do; から: because (also means from))

E.g. そう思ったのは、なぜですか？ (Why did you think so?)

Listing の can be used to *complainingly* list things (similar to the inclusive noun particle と and vague listing particle や, with the added complaining tone). When listing verbs, use 〜

の. When listing nouns or な-adjectives, use 〜だの (not なの! That is for the explanatory usage.). while emphasising the similarity or contrast between items in a list.

E.g. レストランに行くの行かないのでもめた。(We argued over whether to go to a restaurant or not; もめる: to dispute)

E.g. テスト勉強だの部活だので忙しいよ。(I'm busy with things like studying for exams and club activities.)

There is a special idiomatic pattern used to enthusiastically say that something is extraordinary. Take the same adjective and repeat it twice, once in the positive and once in the negative, using the 〜の suffix.

E.g. ポートランのビール、そりゃおいしいの、おいしくないのって！ (Beer in Portland is beyond delicious!; そりゃ is a variant of それは and both are adverbs meaning very/extremely) (Literally: Beer in Portland is not even a matter of delicious or not delicious.)

This can often also be expressed with another idiomatic expression 〜のなんのって (supplementary reading here).

E.g. ポートランのビール、美味しいのなんのって！ (Beer in Portland is beyond delicious!)

G2.10.7 The adjective-noun spectrum: な-adjectives and の-adjectives

Read the main article on Tofugu.

In short, な is used when you want to describe nouns, and の is used when you want to label nouns (e.g. きれいな人 vs. きれいの人 respectively).

Many な-adjectives exhibit this flexibility of converting between adjectives and nouns, based on whether they are suffixed by な or の. Linguists refer to な-adjectives as *"adjectival nouns"* or *"nominal adjectives"*.

There exists a adjective-noun spectrum for adjectives: some are suffixed with な more often, and others の more often. Table 8 provides examples.

Table 8: な/の-adjectives on the adjective-noun spectrum. い-adjectives do not apply.

な ≫ の	Meaning	な > の	Meaning	の > な	Meaning	の ≫ な	Meaning
好き	like	元気	well/fine	大量	large amount	少し	a little
簡単	simple	健康	health(y)	病気	illness/desease	本当	true/truth
大切	important	安全	safe(ty)	最高	best/highest	永遠	eternity
だめ	no good/not allowed	美人	beautiful woman	普通	normal/ordinary	最大	largest/maximum
静か	quiet	不思議	wonderful/miraculous	未定	to be decided/pending	最小	smallest/minimum
大変	very	平和	peace/harmony	独自	unique/original	たくさん	a lot
素敵	splendid	幸せ	happiness	最速	fastest	真実	truth/reality
勝手	selfish(ness)	不幸	misfortune/disaster	一流	first-class/top-ranking	一杯	one cup
複雑	complicated/complex	不安	anxiety/worry/fear	個別	individual/separate		
妙	strange	高級	premium/luxury	固有	characteristic/native		
正解	correct	平等	equality/impartiality	別	another/difference		
変	strange			無名	anonymous/nameless		
必要	necessary/needed			未知	unknown		
深刻	serious			少量	small amount		
困難	difficulty/hardship						
苦手	weak at/bad at						
危険	danger						
嫌い	disliked						
無理	impossible						

な ≫ の	Meaning	な > の	Meaning	の > な	Meaning	の ≫ な	Meaning
異常	strange/abnormal						
正直	honest(ly)						
親切	kind/generous						
残酷	cruel						
有能	competent						
冷静	calm						
真剣	serious						
慎重	cautious						

The different parts of the spectrum are described as follows:

- "な-adjectives": the adjective side of the spectrum. These are frequently used to describe nouns, and are tagged as な-adjectives in many Japanese-English dictionaries.

- "の-adjectives": the noun side of the spectrum. These are frequently used with the の suffix to form labels for nouns, and are tagged as の-adjectives in many Japanese-English dictionaries.

  Words in this category are broadly divided into two groups: those that express <u>absolutes</u> (e.g. 本当、最大、最小) and those that express <u>quantities</u> (e.g. 少し、たくさん、少量、大量).

  Those that express absolutes usually cannot take adverbs (there is no "little" absolute or "big" absolute; an absolute is a binary thing, either it's absolute or not). Those that express quantities can.

  E.g. 昨日**すごくたくさんの**魚が釣れました。(I was able to catch incredibly many fish yesterday.)

  E.g. 電源が切れた途端に、**かなり大量**のデータが消されてしまいました。(Right when the power ran out, quite a large amount of data was erased.)

- Words in the middle of the spectrum: these have subtle shifts when suffixed with な vs. の, but one is typically used more frequently than the other. Typically, の is used with a slight bias towards the act of objective labelling, while な is used with a slight bias towards the act of subjective describing/judging. As a result, using な for some of the adjecives can seem negative or even rude. <u>It's safer to use の, if unsure.</u>

  E.g. 新しい彼氏、有名人なの？ (Is your new boyfriend a famous person?; 氏: Mr./Mrs./Ms. polite suffix) ううん、普通**の**人だよ。(No, he's a normal (objectively ordinary) person.)

  E.g. 新しいの彼氏、変な人なの？ (Is your new boyfriend a weirdo?) ううん、普通**な**人だよ。(No, he's a normal (not weird) person.)

  E.g. その施設には、病気**の**人が多い。 (There are many sick (objective) people at that institution; 施設: facility)

  E.g. その施設には、病気**な**人が多い。 (There are many sick (judgmental) people at that institution; 施設: facility)

Lastly, there is the 「**〜な気分**」 construct. Although 気分 is typically used as 気分がいい or 気分が悪い, we can suffix nouns with 〜な気分 to convey the "mood" associated with the noun. Examples include ワインな気分 ("I'm feeling like wine tonight/It's a wine kinda evening"), 90年代な気分 ("I'm feeling really 90′s today"), 海な気分 ("feeling those beachy vibes") and 終わりな気分 ("feeling like it's over").

G2.11 Adverbs

Just as adjectives describe nouns, adverbs describe adjectives, verbs, other adverbs, or whole sentences. They come before the thing they describe, and the common ones are:

- それは/そりゃ: very/extremely
- めっちゃ: very/extremely/excessively
- 大変: very/greatly/terribly
- すごく: super
- とても: very
- たくさん: many/a lot
- 結構/かなり: fairly
- ちょっと: a little
- 少し: a little
- あまり<negative conj>: not very
- 全然: (not) at all

To turn adjectives into adverbs:

- な-adjectives: 「」 → 「」に

  E.g. アリスは自分の部屋を**きれいにした**。(Alice did her own room toward clean / Alice did her room cleanly / Alice cleaned her room; した is the past tense of する)

  E.g. 図書館の中では、**静かにする**。(Inside the library, do things quietly.)

- い-adjectives: 「」い → 「」く

  E.g. ボブは朝ごはんを**早く**食べた。(Bob ate breakfast quickly/early (depending on context); 早い → 早く)

  E.g. この町は、最近**大きく**変わった。(This town changed greatly lately; 大きい → おおきく)

Note that not all adverbs are derived from adjectives.

E.g. 映画を**たくさん**見た。 (Saw a lot of movies.)

E.g. 最近、**全然**食べない。(Lately, don't eat at all.)

G2.12 Sentence ending particles ね、よ、よね

- の: explanatory tone. Explained above in

- ね: to express seeking and expectation of agreement, like "right?/isn't it?" in English. In the reply 「そう[だ]ね」, the optional だ is often used in masculine contexts.

  E.g. いい天気だ**ね**？そう[だ]**ね**。 (Good weather, huh? Sure is; そう: in that way, as such; そう[だ]ね: it is indeed that way/as such.)

  E.g. 面白い映画だった**ね**。え？全然面白くなかった。 (That was an interesting movie, wasn't it? Huh? No, it wasn't interesting at all)

- よ: to express that you're informing something *new*, like "you know…" in English.

  E.g. 時間がない**よ**。大丈夫だ**よ**。

  E.g. 今日はいい天気だね。うん。でも、明日う雨が降る**よ**。(Good weather today, huh? Yeah. But it will rain tomorrow, you know.)

よ and ね can be combined to both inform about something new and expect agreement at the same time.

E.g. ボブは、魚が好きなんだ**よね**。そうだね。 (You know, you like fish, don't you? It is indeed the case, huh?)

G3 Essential grammar

Now that we have an understanding of the basics, fundamentals, and foundations of Japanese grammar, this section provides specific grammar for practical situations.

G3.1 Verb stems

It seems that "stem" and "root" are used interchangeably; there is no consensus on their definitions, and different sources use either term to refer to the same concept...

Since there is no consensus on the definitions of root/stem, I'll use "root" to refer to /kik/, and "stem" to refer to the stem form 聞き.

Also known as the ます-stem in other texts (we refrain from that term as the stem is used in many more conjugations, not just in ます), stems can be obtained from verbs via the rules in Table 16.

Verb stems are sometimes (not always!) the noun forms of the verbs, e.g. 休み is the noun form of 休む.

We can suffix the stem with target particle に or directional particle へ, then follow with a motion verb (almost always 行く or 来る). This <stem>{に/へ}{行く/来る/…} construct means "to go/ come do <stem>". Use に to mean going/coming for the purpose of doing <stem>; use へ to put emphasis on the literal act of going/coming.

E.g. 明日、映画を**見に行く**。(Tomorrow, go to see movie.)

E.g. 昨日、友達が**遊びへ来た**。(Yesterday, friend came towards a playing activity.; sounds weird)

E.g. 昨日、友達が**遊びに来た**。 (Yesterday, friend came to play.)

The expression 「楽しみにする」 (looking forward to) is formed from a similar grammar rule (though it's a special case and should be considered a set expression).

Compound verbs can be formed by appending verbs to stems. However, there aren't formulaic rules for these; memorise them as separate verbs in their own right.

E.g. 走り出す (break into a run)、切り替える (switch to something else)、付け加える (to add something by attaching it)、言い出す (to start talking)、言いさす (to stop talking)、読み出す (read out data/retrieve)、読みさす (to leave half-read).

G3.2 Polite forms ます、です

The Japanese covered thus far in §G2 is fine for five-year-olds, but adults are expected to use 丁寧語 (**polite** language), 尊敬語 (**honorific** language) and 謙譲語 (**humble** language) where appropriate.

丁寧語 is used when speaking to people of higher social rank or people you're unfamiliar with. 尊敬語 and 謙譲語 are used in professional settings, and builds upon 丁寧語.

The only indicator of which language style is in use is sentence endings. It's not possible to tell whether someone is speaking in casual or polite speech until the sentence is finished.

In 丁寧語, use 「〜ます」 and its conjugations to make verbs polite, and use 「〜です」 for nouns and adjectives (note that the polite です is incompatible with the assertive だ). Detailed rules are in Table 16. Note that ます and です must come at the end of a complete sentence, and never inside any embedded/relative clauses. Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of 丁寧語 conjugations.

Polite verb examples:
- (present-positive) 明日、大学に**行きます**。 (Tomorrow, I go to university.)
- (present-negative) 面白くない映画は**見ません**。(I did not see uninteresting movies.)
- (past-positive) 先週、ボブに**会いました**よ。 (Last week, I met Bob, you know.)
- (past-negative) 昼ご飯を**食べませんでした**ね。(Didn't eat lunch, right?)

Polite adjective examples:
- (present-positive) 子犬はとても**好きです**。(I like puppies very much/puppies like something very much.)
- (present-negative) その部屋はあまり**静かじゃないです**。(The room is not very/really quiet.)
- (past-positive) 先週に見た映画は、とても**面白かったです**。(The movie I saw last week was very interesting.)
- (past-negative) 昨日、時間が**なかったんです**。 (Yesterday, there was no time.; ある → な かった (past negative) → なかった**ん**だ (explanatory) → なかったん**です** (polite))

G3.2.1 です is NOT the polite form of だ, they are completely separate constructs

This is a common misconception! です and だ are two fundamentally different concepts:

- だ is declarative, whereas です is polite.

  E.g. そうだ is the declarative form of そう. そうです is the polite form of そう (see Table 16), but not the polite form of そうだ!

- だ can be used both at the end of both complete sentences and relative clauses, whereas です can only be used at the end of complete sentences.

  E.g. そうだど思います。 (In an indirect quote, it is wrong to quote です: it must be changed to だ.)

  E.g.「はい、そうです」と答える。(The only place where です can be in an embedded clause is in direct quotes.)

G3.3 Addressing people

Take care to use the correct level of politeness.

G3.3.1 Referring to yourself

To refer to yourself, use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):
- 私 : used by both males and females, formal
- 私 : used by both males and females, normal polite (you should use this most of the time)
- 僕: used by males, semi-polite to semi-casual
- 俺: used only by males, very casual, very rough
- あたし: used by females, cutesy and girly (most girls today use 私 instead)
- your own name: used by children, feminine
- わし: used by elderly (males)

E.g. 私の名前はジャッキーです。

G3.3.2 Referring to the listener (second-person)

Even when directly addressing other people, you rarely use variants of "you", as constantly hammering the listener with "you" that comes across as accusatory and confrontational.

Instead, we use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):

- \<title>: common polite (e.g. 社長 president/director, 課長 section manager, 先生 teacher/ anyone with significant expertise including doctors)
- \<last name>\<title>: common polite
- \<last name>さん: common polite, in case no suitable title exists
- \<first name>さん: common semi-polite
- \<last name>くん: for males, casual/endearing, of equal or lower social position
- \<last name>ちゃん: for females, casual/endearing, of equal or lower social position
- \<last name>: common
- \<first name>[{くん, ちゃん}]: only for people you're on first-name basis with
- \<nothing>: common. In normal Japanese conversations, the topic/subject is commonly implied to be the listener. It's completely normal not to use anything at all, since you're directly addressing the listener!
- **そちら**: you, polite
- 君: casual, assuming/very close, used by males to address females, potentially rude
- あなた: rude if spoken, use only in contexts where you must refer to the audience (e.g. on a physical questionnaire)
- **THOU SHALT NOT CROSS THIS LINE**
- あんた: rude, assuming/familiar, expresses annoyance
- お前/おめえ: rude, rough and coarse, used by males
- てめえ: very rude, sounds like you want to beat someone up (used exclusively in movies and comics)
- 貴様: extremely rude, sounds like you want to take someone out (used exclusively in movies and comics)

貴方 is an old-fashioned way for women to refer to their lover or husband, nowadays only used by married middle-aged women.

G3.3.3 Referring to the third person

For people outside of your family, use one of these:

- 彼: he
- 彼女: she
- 彼/ボーイフレンド: boyfriend (prefer former)
- 彼女/ガールフレンド: girlfriend (prefer former)

When referring to family members, there are two levels of politeness: polite and casual. We only use the casual form when we are talking about our own family members to other people. When talking about the listener's family members or when talking directly to your family members, use the polite form.

The polite form comes before the casual form:

- Parents: ご両親 / 両親
- Mother: お母さん / 母
- Father: お父さん / 父
- Wife: 奥さん / 妻
- Husband: ご主人 / 夫 (don't drag the trailing お vowel)
- Older sister: お姉さん / 姉
- Older brother: お兄さん / 兄

- Younger sister: 妹さん / 妹
- Younger brother: 弟さん / 弟
- Son: 息子さん / 息子
- Daughter: 娘さん / 娘

Yes, ご主人様 (master/husband) is an extension of ご主人 (husband).

G3.4 The question marker か particle

These are common question words (see Table 72 for a more complete list):

- 誰: who

- 何: what

- いつ: when

- どこ: where

- なぜ/どうして/なんで: why

  なぜ is formal and forceful
  どうして is softer
  なんで is informal (Source)

- どう/どうやって: how

  どう is more general (Source)

- どれ/どちら/どっち: which

  どれ: three or more
  どちら: two
  どっち: two (informal; Source)

G3.4.1 か in polite questions

The purpose of か is to clearly mark a question in polite sentences. It's not strictly necessary, since polite sentences without a trailing か can be interpreted as a question using a rising trailing intonation during speech. However, it's commonly attached.

There is no need to use a question mark when か is used; the full-stop is used instead. Because か is polite, it is incompatible with the declarative だ.

E.g. お母さんはどこです**か**。母は買い物に行きました。(Where is your mother? My mother went shopping.; 買い物 can refer to both purchased goods and the act of shopping)

E.g. イタリア料理を食べに行きません**か**。すみません。ちょっと、お腹がいっぱいです。(Shall we eat Italian food? Sorry, my stomach is a little full.; いっぱい: full; Note that the question is phrased in the negative, see §G3.4.2)

G3.4.2 Positive and negative polite questions

See discussion at HiNative.

Positive polite questions are plain questions; negative questions have a nuance of suggestion/ invitation.

- 食べに行き**ます**か？: Are you going to eat?

- 食べに行き**ません**か？: Shall we go eat?

G3.4.3 か in casual questions: binary and sarcasm

か has a slightly different purpose in casual speech. Casual questions usually either use explanatory 「の？」or nothing at all, so か is not used here to craft questions. Instead, it is used specifically to:

- question whether something is true or not

  E.g. こんなのを本当に食べる**か**？ (This kind of thing, will they really eat?; こんなの is こんな + の (possession), where こんな means this type of)

- make rhetorical questions/express sarcasm

  E.g. そんなのは、ある**か**よ！ (That kind of thing, do I look like I would have something like that!?; そんなの is そんな + の (possession), where そんな means that type of)

Most actual questions use explanatory の or nothing at all apart from a rise in intonation.

E.g. こんなのを本当に食べる？ (Something like this, are you really going to eat?)

E.g. そんなのは、ある**の**？ (Do you have something like that?)

G3.4.4 か in embedded clauses: referring to embedded questions

This functions similar to direct quoting, and marks the questions in an embedded clause. The outer clause can then talk about the embedded question.

E.g. **昨日何を食べたか**忘れた。 (What I ate yesterday, I forgot.)

E.g. **彼は何を言ったか**分からない。 (What he said, I don't understand.)

E.g. **先生が学校に行ったか**教えない？ (Whether the teacher went to school (binary question), would you please inform me (invitation)?)

To ask "whether or not" (binary question), we can use either <positive>**かどうか**, or <positive>か<negative>か.

E.g. 先生が学校に**行ったか行かなかった**か知らない。(Whether the teacher went to school or not, I don't know.)

E.g. 先生が学校に**行ったかどうか**か知らない。 (Whether the teacher went to school or not, I don't know.)

See more detail in §G3.18.2.

G3.4.5 Modifying question words with suffixes か、も、でも

「」か refers to a particular existence (sometextasciitilde), 「」も refers to the universal (everytextasciitilde), and 「」でも refers to a non-particular existence (anytextasciitilde) (not to be confused with でも for "but"). Question words and their variants are showed in Table 9.

Table 9: Question words and their modified variants. Treat these all as normal nouns. †: 誰も is usually used in negative sentences to mean nobody can do the verb, and to express the positive universal everybody we typically use 皆 [さん]; ‡: 何も is used exclusively in negative sentences.

「」	Meaning	「」か	Meaning	「」も	Meaning	「」でも	Meaning
誰	who	誰か	someone	誰も	nobody†	誰でも	anybody
何	what	何か	something	何も	nothing‡	何でも	anything
いつ	when	いつか	sometime	いつも	always/never	いつでも	anytime

「」	Meaning	「」か	Meaning	「」も	Meaning	「」でも	Meaning
どこ	where	どこか	somewhere	どこ[に]も	everywhere/ nowhere	どこでも	anywhere
なぜ	why	なぜか	some reason				
どう	how	どうか	somehow	どれも	*somehow*	どうでも	anyhow
どれ	which (3 or more)	どれか	one from many	どれも	all/none	どれでも	any of many
どちら	which (2)	どちらか	one of two	どちらも	both/neither	どちらでも	any of two

To mean "For some reason…" you can say 「どういうわけか…」.

「」か examples:
- **誰か**がおいしいクッキーを全部食べた。 (Someone ate all the delicious cookies.)
- **誰が**<ruby>盗<rt>ぬす</rt></ruby>んだのか、誰か知りませんか。 (Who stole it, doesn't anyone know?; 盗む: steal)
- <ruby>犯人<rt>はんにん</rt></ruby>を**どこか**で見ましたか。 (Did you see the criminal somewhere?)
- この<ruby>中<rt>なか</rt></ruby>から**どれか**を<ruby>選<rt>えら</rt></ruby>ぶの。 (You are to select a certain one from inside this.; から: from, 選ぶ: choose)

「」も examples:
- この<ruby>質問<rt>しつもん</rt></ruby>の<ruby>答<rt>こた</rt></ruby>えは、**誰も**知ら**ない**。 (The answer to this question, nobody knows.)
- 友達は**いつも**<ruby>遅<rt>おく</rt></ruby>れる。 (Friend is always late.)
- ここにあるレストランは**どれも**おいしくない。 (All restaurants that are here are not tasty.)
- <ruby>今週末<rt>こんしゅうまつ</rt></ruby>は、**どこにも**行かなかった。 (This weekend, went nowhere.; どこにも means "target is nowhere", も is grammatically the topic particle and should come after the target particle に, so ~~どこもに~~ is incorrect. Treat this as an exception.)

「」でも examples:
- この質問の答えは、**誰でも**分かる。 (The answer to this question, anyone understands.)
- 昼ご飯は、**どこでも**いいです。 (For lunch, anywhere is good.)
- あの人は、本当に**何でも**食べる。 (That person really eats anything.)

G3.5 Apologising

Read a full article here.

Use one of the following (in descending order of politeness):
- すみません: formal
- ごめんなさい: semi-formal
- ごめん[ね]: causal
- <ruby>悪<rt>わる</rt></ruby>い: very casual, only for non-serious matters

  Can be used for past offence: <ruby>悪<rt>わる</rt></ruby>かった。

G3.6 Compound sentences

This section concerns combining multiple sentences into one complex sentences, such as combining "I ran." and "I ate." into "I ran and ate.".

G3.6.1 て form

The て-form of nouns, adjectives and verbs are used to form sequences of states (nouns/adjectives) or actions. The conjugation rules are in §GA.1.

て-form conjugations for です/ます/ません exist but they are part of 尊敬語 and are outside the scope of 丁寧語. In a chain of nouns/adjectives/verbs, only the last one takes the polite form です/ます/ません; everything before takes the plain form. Since て is used when connecting sentences, there is no need for です/ます/ません to have a て-form in 丁寧語.

G3.6.2　Compound sentences (chain of descriptors/actions) using て/で and て-form

Similarly to how we can join "My room is clean. It is quiet. I like it a lot." into "My room is clean, quiet, and I like it a lot." in English using the "and" connector, we can do the same using "て/で" as a connector. Just as と is the noun connector (in exclusive listings), て/で is the connector for nouns, adjectives and verbs.

The syntax is [<v te>]*[<plain/polite form>]. て/で functions like a connector (between two nouns/adjectives/verbs). The entity that comes before is turned into the て-form. The final one in the list does NOT use て-form (use either plain or polite), and determines the tense (present/past) of the entire chain.

E.g. 食堂に**行って**、昼ご飯を**食べて**、昼寝を**する**。 (I will go to canteen, eat lunch, and take a nap.)

E.g. 食堂に**行って**、昼ご飯を**食べて**、昼寝を**した**。(I went to canteen, ate lunch, and took a nap.)

E.g. 時間が**あって**、映画を見ました。 (There was time, and I watched a movie.)

G3.6.3　Causation and reasoning particles から、ので

To express the direct causation (because) and reasoning (therefore) relationships, use から and ので particles:

- から: direct cause marker particle (also from-marker: §G2.9; see also Table 137). The possible syntaxes are: begin{itemize}

  ‣ <direct cause>[だ]から<result>

  If the cause is a non-conjugated noun or な-adjective, you must add だ to differentiate it from the from-marker usage of から.

  E.g. 時間がなかった**から**パーティーに行きませんでした。(There was no time, so didn't go to party.)

  E.g. 友達**から**プレゼントが来た。 (Present came from friend.; from-marker usage)

  E.g. 友達**だから**プレゼントが来た。 (Present came because of friend.; cause marker usage; this sentence sounds a bit odd)

  ‣ だから<result>

  The cause can be omitted if clear from context. Here, だ is compulsory.

  E.g. 時間がなかった。**だから**パーティーに行かなかったの？ (I didn't have time. Is that why you didn't go to the party?)

  ‣ <direct cause>[だ]から[です]

  The result can be omitted if clear from context. から can be treated as a regular noun, so in polite speech, add the です suffix.

E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか？時間がなかった**から**です。(Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの？うん、時間がなかった**から**。(You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

- ので: non-causal explanation/reason marker, carries flavour of explanatory-の. Similar usage patterns as から (almost interchangeable), but less binding than から in that <u>ので doesn't assert that the marked reason is the *direct cause* of the result</u>. ので is thus softer and more polite, and preferred when explaining a reason for doing something considered discourteous.

  Because で is involved, ので is a connector that must exist between two sentences (if dangling, the sentence is implied to be a dangling sentence).

  ‣ <reason>[な]ので<result>.

  If the cause is a non-conjugated noun or な-adjective, you must add な to differentiate it from the possession marker usage of の.

  E.g. 時間がなかった**ので**パーティーに行きませんでした。(There was no time, therefore didn't go to party.)

  E.g. ちょっと忙し**ので**、そろそろ失礼〔しつれい〕します。(I'm a little busy, therefore I'll be making my leave soon.; 失礼します literally means "I'm doing a discourtesy" and is used to politely mean you're make your leave or disturbing someone's time.)

  E.g. 私は学生**な{の/ん}で**、お金がないんです。 (I am a student, therefore I have no money.)

  E.g. ここは静か**な{の/ん}で**、とても穏〔おだ〕やかです。 (It is quiet here, therefore it is very calm here.)

If omitting the reason or result (which is clear from context), use the explanatory-の particle instead (**の[だ]/のです/んだ/んです** see §G2.10.4).

  ‣ な{の/ん}で<result>

  Here, な is compuslory.

  E.g. **な{の/ん}で**、友達に会う時間がない。(Therefore, there is no time to meet friend.)

  ‣ <reason>{の/のだ/のです/んだ/んです}

  E.g. どうして遅〔おく〕れた**{のです/んです}**か？ (Why were you late?)

  E.g. パーティーに行かなかったの？うん、時間がなかった**{の/のだ/んだ}**。(You didn't go to the party? Yeah, because I didn't have time.; casual)

  E.g. どうしてパーティーに行きませんでしたか？時間がなかった**{のです/んです}**。(Why didn't you go to the party? Because I didn't have time.; polite)

G3.6.4 Despite marker particle のに

To express the idea of "despite", the のに marker is used. The schema is <despite>のに、<sentence>.

E.g. 毎日運動した**のに**、全然痩〔や〕せなかった。 (Despite exercising every day, I didn't get thinner.; 痩せる: to slim)

Note that non-conjucated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the な particle, similar to rules for explanatory の.

E.g. 学生**な**のに、彼女は勉強しない。 (Despite being a student, she does not study.)

G3.6.5 General and contradiction connector particles けど(、けれど、けれども)、が

けど and が are used as general connectors of any two sentences, like how we construct running sentences in English using "and". Also, they can be used to express the idea of contradiction between the two sentences: in this usage, が is slightly more polite (stronger contradiction) than けど. Politer forms of けど are けれど and けれども (???). The schema is <sentence 1>{が/けど/けれど/けれども}、<sentence 2>.

E.g. マトリックスを見た**けど**、面白かった。 (general connector; I watched "The Matrix" and it was interesting.)

E.g. デパートに行きました**が**、いい物がたくさんありました。 (general connector; I went to the department store and there was a lot of good stuff.)

E.g. デパートに行きました**が**、何も欲しくなかったです。 (contradictory connector; I went to the department store but there was nothing I wanted.)

Note that non-conjucated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the だ state-of-being assertion.

E.g. 今日は暇**だけど**、明日は忙しい。 (I'm free today but I will be busy tomorrow.)

E.g. **だ**けど、彼がまだ好き**な**の。 (That may be so, but I still like him.)

G3.7 Reason vague listing connector し

し is used to list reasons for a verb or state-of-being. It is vague in the same sense as the や particle (§G2.10.4): there is a nuance that there may be other reasons not listed. The schema is (<reason>し)*<reason>.

E.g. どうして彼が好きなの？優しい**し**、かっこいい**し**、面白いから。(Why do you like him? Because he's kind, attractive, and interesting (among other things).; から means because here.)

Note that non-conjucated state-of-being nouns and na-adjectives must be tagged with the だ state-of-being assertion.

E.g. どうして友達じゃないんですか？先生**だ**し、年上（としうえ）**だ**し…
(Why aren't they your friend (seeking explanation)? Well, they are the teacher, and older…)

For a less vague, more closed listing, use the て-form instead.

E.g. どうして彼が好きなの？優しくて、かっこよくて、面白いから。
(Why do you like him? Because he's kind, attractive, and interesting (among other things).)

G3.8 Adjective and verb vague listing construct 〜たり[です]

This is the verb/adjective version of the や particle (§G2.10.4). For each verb/adjective in the sequence, conjugate to past tense and add 「り」. Additionally, for the final one, tag on a 「する」, which will control the tense ({positive, negative} times {present, past}) of the entire sentence. The schema is (<past adj/v>り、)*<past adj/v>りする.

E.g. 映画を見た**り**、本を読んだ**り**、昼寝した**りする**。(I do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. この大学の授業は簡単だった**り**、難しかった**りです**。(Classes in this university are sometimes easy, sometimes difficult (and sometimes other descriptors).)

The tense of the entire sentence can be changed by conjugating the trailing する.

E.g. 映画を見た**り**、本を読んだ**り**、昼寝した**りしない**。(I don't do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. 映画を見た**り**、本を読んだ**り**、昼寝した**りした**。(I did things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

E.g. 映画を見た**り**、本を読んだ**り**、昼寝した**りしなかった**。(I didn't do things like watch movies, read books, and take naps (among other things).)

G3.9 Progressive form 〜ている (enduring state of action, enduring state-of-being)

To express an enduring state of action (-ing in English), conjugate the verb to the て-form (§G3.6.1, then append 〜ている. This form can be used regardless of whether the verb subject is animate or inanimate. Further conjugations of the progressive form follow rules of the いる verb.

Interestingly, ある *does not have a progressive form. See discussion in* §G3.13.

E.g. 友達は何を**している**の？昼ご飯を**食べている**。 (What is friend doing? Eat*ing* lunch.; している is the progressive form of する.)

E.g. 何を**読んでいます**か。教科書を**読んでいます**。 (What are you reading? I am reading textbook.; います is the polite form of いる.)

E.g. 話を**聞いています**か。ううん、**聞いていません**。 (Are you listening to me? No, I'm not listening.; いません is the polite form of いない.)

In casual speech (not applicable in writing!), 〜ている can be shortened to 〜てる. However, the い is not dropped in the polite progressive form 〜ています. Try not to let this casual speak become a habit too early on! Learn the correct form first.

E.g. 友達は何を**してる**の？昼ご飯を**食べてる**の。 (What is friend doing? Eating lunch.; 食べてる = eating (casual); 食べる = eat (dict))

In fact, laziness can go further: 何をしているの can be shortened by dropping particles and unnecessary vowels to become 何してんの? A related lazy casual expression is 「何やってんの」, which is a contraction of 「何をやっているの」.

The same form can also be used to convey **enduring state-of-being**, after a verb is performed. **This is decided by context.** E.g. 結婚している can either mean someone is currently getting married, or that someone is married and is currently in the married state. **This becomes less context-based and more of a rule for the verbs 知る、分かる, and motion verbs.**

- **知っている** means to be/have been in the enduring *state* of knowing. 知る refers to the *change of state* from not knowing to knowing, it's different and rarely used in its unconjugated form! ([HN1], [HN2])

E.g. 道は**知っていますか**？ はい、今日に知りました。 (Do you know the way? Yes, I found out about it today.)

E.g. この歌を**知っていますか**。はい、1年前から**知っていますよ**。 (Do you know this song? Yes, I've known it for a year now.)

- **わかっている** means to be/have been in the enduring *state* of understanding. わかる refers to the *change* from not understanding to understanding, it's different! ([HN])

  E.g. 前方は危ない、わかりますか。はい、はい、**わかりました**。(The area in front is dangerous, do you understand? Yes, yes, I am aware of that.)

  E.g. 前方は危ない、わかりますか。はい、はい、**わかっています**。 (The area in front is dangerous, do you understand? Yes, yes, I am already aware of that, you don't have to tell me.)

  わかっている, in certain contexts, can make you sound proud or dismissive. Be careful!

- **<motion verb て-form>ている** means to <motion verb> and exist (<v> + いる), and refers to the state-of-being after performing the verb.

  E.g. 鈴木さんはどこですか。もう、家に**帰っている**。 (Where is Suzuki-san? He is already at home.)

  E.g. 美恵ちゃんはどこですか。もう**来ているよ**。(Mie-chan is already here, you know.; 行って is the て-form of 行く; 来て is the て-form of 来る, "来って" is wrong!)

G3.10　Resultant state 〜てある

To express that an action is completed, with the implicit nuance that the action was completed in preparation for something else, we use 〜てある.

E.g. 準備どうですか？準備は、もう**してある**よ。 (How are the preparations? The preparations are already done.)

E.g. 旅行の計画は終わった？うん、切符を買ったし、ホテルの予約も**してある**。(Are the plans for the trip complete? Uh huh, not only did I buy the ticket, I also took care of the hotel reservations.)

G3.11　The auxiliary verb 置く in 〜ておく、〜とく

To express that an action is completed (or will be completed), with the explicit nuance that the action was completed in preparation for something else, we use the auxiliary verb 〜ておく. 置く when used directly (meaning "to put/place") is written in 漢字, but when used as an auxiliary verb it is written in 仮名 alone. Further conjugations of the compound verb follow rules of the 置く verb.

E.g. 晩ごはんを**作っておく**。 (Make dinner (in advance for the future).

E.g. 電池を**買っておきます**。 (I'll buy batteries (in advance for the future).)

「〜ておく」 can be contracted to 「〜とく」. Further conjugations follow rules of the とく auxiliary verb (which means to do something in readiness for).

E.g. 晩ごはんを**作っとく**。 (Make dinner (in advance for the future).)

E.g. 電池を**買っときます**。 (I'll buy batteries (in advance for the future).)

G3.12 Spatial and temporal directional auxiliary verbs 〜ていく、〜てくる

To express that an action is spatially oriented towards or from some place, we use the 〜ていく and 〜てくる auxiliary verbs respectively. Think of them as "<v> + go" and "<v> + come" respectively. Further conjugations of the compound verb follow the rules of the trailing いく or くる verb.

E.g. 鉛筆を学校へ**持っていく**？ (spatial; Are you taking pencil to school?)

E.g. 鉛筆を家に**持ってくる**？ (spatial; Are you bringing pencil back home?)

E.g. お父さんは、早く**帰ってきました**。 (spatial; きました is the polite past-tense of くる)

E.g. 駅の方へ**走っていった**。 (spatial; いった is the past tense of いく; 駅 is train station; 方 is direction)

The same auxiliary verbs have a temporal usage. 〜ていく can be used to mean "<v> continuously/progressively into the future". 〜てくる can be used to mean "<v> performed up to the present".

E.g. 冬に入って、コートを着ている人が**増えていきます**。 (temporal; Entering winter, people wearing coat will gradually increase.; The 入 in 入る is only read as い when used in compound verbs where the meaning of "entering" is faded.)

E.g. 一生懸命、**頑張っていく**！ (temporal; With all my might, I will try my hardest moving into the future!)

E.g. 色々な人**付き合ってきた**けど、いい人はまだ見つからない。(temporal; Went out with various types of people up till the present, but a good person hasn't been found yet.; 付き合ってきた is the past-tense of 付き合ってくる.)

E.g. 日本語をずっと前から**勉強してきて**、結局早めた。 (temporal; Studied Japanese from way back before, and eventually quit.; 勉強してきて is the て-form of 勉強してくる.)

G3.13 Potential form 〜◯る/〜られる/〜できる/来られる

To express the ability to perform a verb, the verb is conjugated. できる is actually the potential form of する! For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All potential form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

Interestingly, ある *does not have a potential form. See more in* §G3.13.2.

In casual/slang speech, 〜られる (for originally る-verbs and 来る) can be shortened to 〜れる, so 食べられる can be shortened to 食べれる. Try not to let this casual speak become a habit too early on! Learn the correct form first.

E.g. 漢字は**書けます**か？ (Can you write Kanji?; 書けます is the polite potential form of 書く.)

E.g. 残念だが、今週末は**行けない**。 (行けない is the negative potential form of 行く.)

E.g. もう**信じられない**。 (信じられない is the negative potential form of 信じる.)

Importantly, potential forms do not have direct objects, since no actual action is taken, so を cannot be used. Whenever を is to be used, use が or the topic particles は、も、etc. instead.

E.g. 富士山が**登れた**。 (I could climb Mt. Fuji.; 富士山を登れた is wrong!)

E.g. 重い荷物は**持てます**。 (I am able to hold heavy luggage.; 持てます is the polite potential form of 持つ: the potential form is 持てる.)

G3.13.1 The special cases 見られる、聞ける and the alternatives 見ることができる、聞くことができる (vs. 見える、聞こえる)

The transitive verbs 見る and 聞く are paired with their intransitive counterparts 見える and 聞こえる. However, the potential forms of 見る and 聞く, 見られる and 聞ける, exist. For these two case, expression of the "ability to perform a verb" meaning is left to the intransitive counterparts. The potential forms take on a special, additional layer of meaning: **to be given the opportunity** to see or hear something.

E.g. 今日は晴れて、富士山が見える。 (It cleared up today and Mt. Fuji is visible.; 晴れる: (of sky) to clear up)

E.g. 友達のおかげで、映画はタダで**見られた**。 (Thanks to my friend, I was able to watch the movie for free.; タダ: free-of-charge)

E.g. 周りがうるさくて、彼が言っていたことがあんまり聞こえなかった。(The surroundings were noisy and I couldn't really hear what he was saying.; 周り: surroundings)

E.g. 久しぶりに彼の声が**聞けた**。 (For the first time in a long time, I was able to hear his voice.)

That said, it is actually more common to express "given the opportunity" as "the seeing/hearing thing is doable (**〜{こと/の}ができる**) ", as in the following examples.

E.g. 友達のおかげで、映画はタダで**見る{こと/の}ができた**。 (Thanks to my friend, I was able to watch the movie for free.; タダ: free-of-charge)

E.g. 久しぶりに彼の声が**聞く{こと/の}ができた**。 (For the first time in a long time, I was able to hear his voice.)

G3.13.2 Potential to exist: あり ruby{得{え/う}る}

Interestingly, ある doesn't have a potential form. The round-about way of saying "possible to exist" is「あることができる」, but this is almost never used. Instead, we use あり得る, which is actually a compound verb made from ある and the auxiliary verb 得る (meaning to be able to), and not considered to be a potential form of ある by natives (see discussion on Reddit).

For 得, the unconjugated form can be read as う (slightly more formal and traditional), but all conjugated forms use え. I'd stick to え always, the modern pronunciation (see discussion on [HN]).

E.g. そんなことは**あり得る**。 (That kind of situation/event is possible.)

E.g. そんなことは**あり得ない**。 (That kind of situation/event is possible.)

E.g. 彼が寝坊したこともう**あり得る**ね。 (It is possible that he overslept.; 寝坊する: to oversleep)

E.g. 其れは、あり得ない話だよ。 (That's an impossible story/scenario.)

G3.14 〜にする、〜になる auxiliary verbs

All forms in this section allow further conjugations based on the rules of 〜する and 〜なる.

For adjectives, both <adj>にする and <adj>になる have the standard interpretation of causing something to become the adjective, or to become the adjective itself respectively:

- (revision and extension of §G2.11) **<na-adj>にする/<i-adj root>くする** means to make something become <adj>.

  E.g. 静かにする (be/make quiet)、きれいにする (make clean).

  E.g. 強くする (make stronger)、小さくする (make smaller).

- **<na-adj>になる/<i-adj root>くなる** means to become <adj>.

  E.g. 去年から背が**高くなった**ね。 (Your height has gotten taller from last year, huh?; 背: height)

  E.g. 運動しているから、**強くなる**。 (Because I am exercising, I'll become stronger.)

  E.g. 勉強をたくさんしたから、頭 が**よくなった**。(Because I studied a lot, I became smarter.)

For nouns, <nn>にする has a special meaning, though <nn>になる preserves the standard interpretation:

- (new!) **<nn>にする** means to decide on <nn> ("do with <nn> as destination"), and is commonly used when ordering things from a menu.

  E.g. 私は、ハンバーガーとサラド**にします**。 (I'll go with the hamburger and salad.; にします is the polite form of にする.)

  E.g. 他にいいものがたくさんあるけど、やっぱりこれ**にする**。 (There are many other good things, but as I thought, I'll go with this one.; 他に: besides/in addition to)

- **<nn>になる** means to become <nn>.

  E.g. 医者になる。 (Become a doctor.)

For verbs, while we recognise that adverbs can modify verbs, we do not have a way to convert verbs into a modifying adverb, unlike what we can do with adjectives. Instead, we refer to the verb using こと (event/thing) or 様 (manner), then tag on 〜にする or 〜になる. In fact, 〜ことにする、〜ことになる、〜ようにする、〜ようになる have special meanings (the last two are usually written in 仮名 alone).

<v>ことに{する/なる} have an nuance of *deciding* to <v>. <u>v>ようにする specifically means to *try* to do <v>.</u> <v>ようになる specifically indicates a change towards <v> which has/will take place.

- **<v>ことにする** means to decide to <v>. A related form, **<v>ことにしている**, means to decide to make it a rule/practice to <v> ("to continuously decide to <v>").

  E.g. 海外に行く**ことにした**。(I decided that I will go abroad.)

  E.g. 私は6時に起床する**ことにしている**。 (I make a practice of getting up at six.)

- **<v>ことになる** means to have been arranged/decided so that <v>.

  E.g. 海外に行く**ことになった**。 (It's been arranged/decided that I will go abroad.)

- **<v>ようにする** means to try to make sure that <v>.

  E.g. 肉を毎日食べない**ようにする**。 (I will try not to eat meat everyday.)

  To express something like "I'm trying to study", use「勉強するように<u>している</u>」. My previous attempt "勉強<u>している</u>ようにする" is unnatural, because ようにする refers to you trying

to do something *in the future*, and 勉強している is already happening. Furthermore, this incorrect form may be misconstrued as "I'm acting like I'm studying". [GMN]

- **<v>ようになる** means to come to be that/start to <v>. The implicit nuance is on a change of state from not <v> to <v>.

  E.g. 肉を毎日食べない**ようになった**。 (I started to not eat meat everyday.)

Furthermore, because potential verbs describe a state of possibility rather than an actual action, <v potential>ようになる is often used to describe a change (from a state of infeasibility) to a state of feasibility.

E.g. 日本に来て、スシが**食べられるようになった**。 (After coming to Japan, I became able to eat sushi.)

E.g. 1年間練習したから、ピアノが**弾けるようになった**。(Because I practised for a year, I became able to play the piano.; 弾く: to play a stringed/keyboard instrument)

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が**見えなくなった**。 (After going underground, Mt. Fuji became not visible.；見える → 見えない → 見えなくなる → 見えなくなった)

G3.14.1 ～なくなる versus ～ないようになる

In the final example in the previous section, **見えないようになった** is also acceptable. Both mean the same, though 見え*ない*ようになった focuses on the *change*. 見え*なく*なった focuses on the *result*, and is more commonly used. ([HN], [goo]), [GMN]

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が**見えなくなった**。 (After going underground, Mt. Fuji became <u>not visible</u>.；見える → 見えない → 見えなくなる → 見えなくなった)

E.g. 地下に入って、富士山が**見えないようになった**。(After going underground, Mt. Fuji <u>became</u> not visible.)

G3.14.2 Decoupling form and function in Japanese grammar

Read the main discussion on SOF, *courtesy of MT.*

The phrase 「見えなくなった」 is gramatically correct, but explaining how it came to is not straightforward.

One important takeaway is that "Japanese is not like Indo-European languages, and so at some point, clinging to Indo-European grammatical categories can get in the way".

It is a misconception to parse 見えなくなった as "見えなく (adverb form of adjective 見えない) + なった (past tense of なる)".

An adverb refers to a grammatical *function*, specifically the function of describing the *manner* something is or some action is done. Since 見えなく does <u>not</u> mean "in a manner that is not visible", it is <u>not</u> serving the function of the adverb. "In English, you can say adverbs end in 'ly'. Does that mean that bully is an adverb or that silly is an adverb?"

見えなく merely takes on the same grmamatical *form* as adverbs. 見えない is in the *form* of an い-adjectives, and so it conjugates like い-adjectives: <u>conjugation rules are based on form, not function</u>. In Japanese, 見えなく is the 連用形 (conjunctive form) of 見えない, the form used during conjugation with other grammatical units. No native will understand 見えなく as "in a manner

that is not visible"; "it's just part of the form into which the word must *inflect* to function properly in the sentence".

Specifically, 見えなくなった is made of 見える + ない + なる. To link these into a phrase, each component must be converted into the 連用形 (actually ない comes after the 未然形 (nai stem of a verb) of 見える, which is 見え). Thus the required forms are 見え (未然形)、なく (連用形)、なった (past), resulting in 見えなくなった.

G3.15 Conditionals

There are four ways to say "if" in Japanese.

G3.15.1 Conditional form 〜ば

The Takoboto dictionary refers to this as the "provisional form", for some reason.

This is the simplest, most general conditional, and is a conjugation of nouns, adjectives and verbs. Refer to §GA.1 for detailed conjugation rules. It means if <future …>ば, then <…>". The focus is on the conditional predicate, i.e. the part before the ば, not on the statement that follows.

The conjugation rule for nouns and な-adjectives is suffixing 「〜であれば」, which is actually using the conditional form あれば of the verb ある. 「である」 is a formal expression we will see much later (???).

In the examples that follow, the focus is underlined.

E.g. 友達に**会えれば**、買い物に行きます。 (If I can meet my friend, we will go shopping.; 会えれば is the conditional form of the potential verb 会える)

E.g. お金が**あれば**いいね。 (If I had money, it would be good, huh?)

E.g. **楽しければ**、私も行く。 (If it's fun, I'll go too.)

E.g. **楽しくなければ**、私もう行かない。 (If it's not fun, I'll also not go.)

E.g. **食べなければ**病気になるよ。 (If you don't eat, you will become sick.)

G3.15.2 Past conditional form 〜たら[ば]

The past conditional form conveys the same idea as the basic conditional form (§G3.15.1), but with a difference in focus: the focus is on the statement that follows the conditional predicate, i.e. the part after the たら[ば], not on the predicate itself. The optional [ば] is used for formality; in causal speech it is omitted.

The predicate always takes on the past tense, though this doesn't necessarily mean the predicate must have happened in the past. It can be a future, not-yet-happened event too, just like English's "if … *were* to happen/if I *were* …, then …".

In the examples that follow, the focus is underlined.

E.g. **暇だったら**[ば]、遊びに行くよ。 (If I am free, I'll go to play.)

E.g. **学生だったら**[ば]、学生割引で買えます。 (If you're a student, you can buy with a student discount.)
わりびき

E.g. 友達に**会えたら**[ば]、買い物に行きます。 (If I can meet my friend, we will go shopping.)

E.g. お金が**あったら**[ば]いいね。 (If I had money, it would be good, huh?)

There is also a second usage, to express surprise at an unexpected past outcome, via the schema <past predicate/prior event>たら[ば]、<unexpected past outcome>.

E.g. 家に帰ったら[ば]、誰もいなかった。 (When I went home, there was (unexpectedly) no one there.)

E.g. アメリカに行ったら[ば]、たくさん太りました。 (As a result of going to America, I (unexpectedly) got really fat.; 太りました is the past polite form of 太る)

The way to disambiguate between the two usages is to first recognise that in either case, when we see/hear たら[ば], we focus on what comes next. Then, if what comes next is in present tense, there's no surprise nuance; if what comes next is in past tense, then there is a surprise nuance.

G3.15.3 Expected consequence conditionals with と

This is similar in nuance to the C だたら E construct (see 137), with the added element of expectedness.

A と B means that if A happens, then as a natural consequence B is *expected* to happen. The schema is C[だ]と E. Note that the state-of-being だ must be made explicit for nouns and な-adjectives, for disambiguation with other usages of と!

E.g. 先生だと、きっと年上なんじゃないですか。 (If he's a teacher, surely he is senior, right?; きっと: surely; なん is the contraction of なの (noun explanatory ender), じゃないですか is a polite form of asking)

E.g. ボールを落とすと落ちる。 (If you drop the ball, it will fall.)

E.g. 電気を消すと暗くなる。 (If you turn off the lights, it will become dark.; 暗い: dark)

E.g. 学校に行かないと友達と会えないよ。(If you don't go to school, you can't meet your friends.)

E.g. たくさん食べると太るよ。 (If you eat a lot, you will get fat.)

G3.15.4 Contextual conditionals with なら[ば]

Contextual conditionals express the nuance that the statement will occur *given that* the contextual predicate holds. It's translated as "If given <predicate>, then <statement>". The schema is <context>なら[ば]、<statement>. The optional [ば] is used for formality; in casual speech it is omitted.

E.g. みんなが行くなら[ば]私も行く。 (If given that everyone is going, then I'll go too.)

E.g. アリスさんが言うなら[ば]問題ないよ。(If given that Alice says so, then there's no problem.)

E.g. 図書館はどこですか。図書館なら[ば]、あそこです。(Where is the library? If given that you're talking about the library, then it's over there.)

G3.15.5 もし as an uncertainty embellishment

The adverb もし (and related ones like もしや、もしかし) are only a supplement to add the nuance of uncertainty on whether the predicate/condition is true ("perhaps/by any chance"). One of the four forms above must still be used.

E.g. もしよかったら、映画を見に行きますか。 (past conditional; If by any chance it's ok with you, go to watch movie?; 見に is the adverb of 見る)

E.g. **もし**時間がない**なら**、明日でもいいよ。(contextual conditional; If by chance given that there's no time, tomorrow is fine as well.)

G3.16 Prohibition, requirement and permission

Expressing the idea that something must not be done, must be done, or that it's ok to do/not do is common in Japanese.

G3.16.1 Prohibition (things that must not be done) 〜ては{だめ/いけない/ならない}

There are three adjectives that convey prohibition: だめ、いけない、ならない. Of the three, だめ is casual (ダメ is even more casual, used in friendly settings; [HN]). Also, ならない is used more for general rules, laws and policies that apply for more than one person, so it can be interpreted as the sternest of the three. In terms of sternness, だめ < いけない < ならない.

いけない comes from 行けない which means bad/wrong/naughty, but when used in the prohibitory manner is written in 仮名 alone.

All conjugations of the three adjectives are shown in Table 10. The polite forms taken by いけない and ならない can be explained by interpreting them as present-negative forms of the verbs いける (meaning to go well) and なる (to become) respectively.

Table 10: Prohibition conjugations.

Present prohibition	だめ	いけない	ならない
Past prohibition	だめだった	いけなかった	ならなかった
Present prohibition (polite)	だめです	いけません	なりません
Past prohibition (polite)	だめでした	いけませんでした	なりませんでした

The long-form schema for prohibition is <v te>は{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

E.g. ここに**入っては**いけません。 (You must not enter here.)

E.g. それを**食べては**だめ！ (You can't eat that!)

E.g. 夜、遅くまで**電話しては**ならない。 (You must not use the phone until late at night.)

E.g. 早く**寝ては**なりませんでした。 (I wasn't allowed to sleep early.)

E.g. **死んでは**ダメだよ！ (You can't die!)

E.g. **泳いでは**なりません。 (Do not swim.)

The contractions for expressing prohibition involve the following replacements. Note that the {だめ/いけない/ならない} must not be omitted for contracted prohibition.

$$\overbrace{\text{...ては}}^{\text{v te}}\{だめ/いけない/ならない\} \mapsto \quad \overset{\text{v te fragment}}{\widetilde{...}}\quad ちゃ\{だめ/いけない/ならない\}$$

$$\overbrace{\text{...では}}^{\text{v te}}\{だめ/いけない/ならない\} \mapsto \quad \overset{\text{v te fragment}}{\widetilde{...}}\quad じゃ\{だめ/いけない/ならない\}$$

$$\text{Equivalently,} \quad ては \mapsto ちゃ, \quad では \mapsto じゃ.$$

The second form is used for verbs with endings in {ぐ,む,ぬ,ぶ}; their て-forms use で.}

The contracted schema for prohibition is <v te fragment>{ちゃ/じゃ}{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

E.g. ここに**入っちゃ**いけません。 (You must not enter here.)

E.g. それを**食べちゃ**だめ！ (You can't eat that!)

E.g. 夜、遅くまで**電話しちゃ**ならない。 (You must not use the phone until late at night.)

E.g. 早く**寝ちゃ**なりませんでした。 (I wasn't allowed to sleep early.)

E.g. **死んじゃ**ダメだよ！ (You can't die!)

E.g. **泳いじゃ**なりません。 (Do not swim.)

Side note: 「死んじゃった」 *is actually a contraction of* 「死んでしまう」*, where* しまう *is an auxiliary verb meaning "to do accidentally", and* でしまう *is contracted to* じゃう*, then conjugated into the past tense as* じゃった*. It's got nothing to do with the* 死んじゃ *we see in this section, which comes from* 死んでは*.*

Finally, the ちゃ/じゃ contractions here are slightly feminine.

G3.16.2 Requirement (things that must be done)

Requirement is expressed as the negation of prohibition. The <v te> is the one that is negated, and there are three grammatical schemae that can be used. All are correct, and are all used at least in formal writing, so learn them all.

The three long-form grammatical schemae for requirement:

1. <v te-negative>は{だめ/いけない/ならない}.

   E.g. 毎日学校に**行かなくては**なりません。 (I must go to school everyday.)

   E.g. 宿題を**しなくては**いけなかった。 (I had to do homework.)

2. <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない}. This uses the expected conseuqence conditional (§G3.15.3). The literal meaning is: if you don't do something, the expected conseuqence is no good. This is the easiest form, and is used even outside of the expected consequence characterisation.

   E.g. 毎日学校に**行かないと**なりません。 (I must go to school everyday.)

   E.g. 宿題を**しないと**いけなかった。 (I had to do homework.)

3. <v conditional-negative>{だめ/いけない/ならない}. This uses the conditional form (§G3.15.1). For requirement, because the verb is negated, the conditional-negative always contains 〜なければ.

   E.g. 毎日学校に**行かなければ**なりません。 (I must go to school everyday.)

   E.g. 宿題を**しなければ**いけなかった。 (I had to do homework.)

In casual speech, however, people default to either the <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない} or the contractions that follow. When used to express requirement, the expected consequence conditional と (§G3.15.3) loses the expected consequence nuance (it's used in more situations that what it was originally defined for).

The contractions for expressing requirement involve the following replacements. Note that the {だめ/いけない/ならない} is omitted for contracted requirement.

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{[first schema]} & \overbrace{\cdots なくては}^{\text{v te-negative}}\{だめ/いけない/ならない\} \mapsto & \overbrace{\cdots な}^{\text{v negative fragment}} \quad くちゃ \\
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{[second schema]} & \overbrace{\cdots ない}^{\text{v negative}}\, と\,\{だめ/いけない/ならない\} \mapsto & \overbrace{\cdots ない}^{\text{v negative}}\, と \\
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{[third schema]} & \overbrace{\cdots なければ}^{\text{v conditional-negative}}\{だめ/いけない/ならない\} \mapsto & \overbrace{\cdots な}^{\text{v negative fragment}} \quad きゃ \\
\end{array}
$$

Equivalently,   なくて ↦ なくちゃ,   なければ ↦ なきゃ.

For the first schema contraction, なくちゃ is the colloquial form of なくては, which is an abbreviation of なくてはいけない. For the third schema contraction, なきゃ is the colloquial form of なければ, which is the conditional-negative form of the verb ある. In a sense, every verb has two colloquial "requirement" forms: ⋯なくちゃ and ⋯なきゃ, based on their negative forms.

Note that these contractions cannot be conjugated into the past tense, i.e. "〜なくちゃった", "〜なきゃった", "〜なくちゃない", "〜なきゃない" do not exist! [TNSJ] If you want to mean requirement *in the past*, use any of the three long form schemae above. If you want to mean prohibition, use the one contracted schema in §G3.16.1. If you want to mean not a requirement (i.e. okay to not do), use the one schema in §G3.16.3.

Here are the three contracted grammatical schemae for requirement.

1. <v negative fragment ending in な>くちゃ.

   E.g. 毎日学校に**行かなくちゃ**。 (I must go to school everyday.)

   E.g. 宿題を**しなくちゃ**。 (I *have* to do homework.)

2. <v negative>と.

   E.g. 毎日学校に**行かないと**。 (I must go to school everyday.)

   E.g. 宿題を**しないと**。 (I *have* to do homework.)

3. <v negative fragment ending in な>きゃ.

   E.g. 毎日学校に**行かなきゃ**。 (I must go to school everyday.)

   E.g. 宿題を**しなきゃ**。 (I *have* to do homework.)

(Notice that the homework example has been changed to present tense; the past tense has no contractions.)

Finally, the なくちゃ contraction here is slightly feminine.

G3.16.3 Permission (things that are okay to do or not to do) 〜てもいい

The schema for permission is simply <allowed v te>も{いい/大丈夫/構わない}. Other permissive enders work too but these three are the most common. 構わない is the negative form of 構う, meaning to mind. For <v te>もいい, the も may be dropped in casual speech.

E.g. 全部食べて[**も**]**いい**よ。 (You can go ahead and it it all.; "Even if you eat it all, it's good, you know.")

E.g. 全部食べなくて[も]いいよ。 (You don't have to eat it all.)

E.g. もう帰って[も]いい? (Can I go home already?)

E.g. これ、ちょっと見て[も]いい？ (Can I take a quick look at this?)

E.g. 全部飲んでも大丈夫だよ。 (It's okay if you drink it all.)

E.g. 全部飲んでも構わないよ。 (You can drink it all, I don't mind.)

G3.17 Desires, invitation and suggestions

This section concerns the expression of direct desires and discreet suggestions.

G3.17.1 Desiderative form 〜たい

Takoboto and most sources simply call this the たい form, but desiderative, meaning expressing a desire to, is more descriptive.

The conjugation rule is simple: <stem>たい. This transforms the verb into an い-adjective (in terms of form), but still retaining the behaviour of verbs to use verb particles を、に、へ (§G2.9). Its form conjugate like い-adjectives: **〜たい** (present-positive desiderative), **〜たくない** (present-negative desiderative), **〜たかった** (past-positive desiderative), **〜たくなかった** (past-negative desiderative).

Note that ある does not have a desiderative form: inanimate objects cannot desire anything. いる's desiderative form is いたい.

The desiderative form can only be used from the first person, because you cannot read other people's mind and express what they want to do. To refer to other people's desires, use direct or indirect quotations (???). Questions about other people's desires are permitted because we are not making presumptions.

E.g. ずっと一緒にいたい。 (I want to be together forever.)

E.g. 何をしたいですか。 (What do you want to do?)

E.g. 犬と遊びたいですか。 (Do you want to play with dog?)

E.g. オン前に行きたい。 (I want to go to a hot spring.)

E.g. ケーキ、食べたくないの？ (You don't want to eat cake?)

E.g. 食べたくなかったけど食べなくなった。 (I didn't want to eat, but I became wanting to eat.)

E.g. 食べたくなくなった。 (I became not wanting to eat.; to parse this, split it as 食べた|くな|くなった: eat + negative desire + became.)

G3.17.2 Auxiliary adjective ほしい

The 「<nn>が欲しい」 construct means to want <nn>. To express that we want a verb <v> done, or that we want the listener to do <v>, we use the auxiliary adjective ほしい. This auxiliary usage is written in 仮名 alone.

The auxiliary adjective ほしい is actually rarely used in practice, since there are other more appropriate ways to make requests (???).

E.g. 大好きぬいぐるみが欲しい！ (I want a big stuffed doll!; ぬいぐるみ: stuffed toy)

E.g. 全部**食べてほしい**んだけど…。 (I want it all eaten but…; This does not say "I want to eat it all": that would be 全部食べたいんだ。)

E.g. 部屋を**きれいにしてほしい**のよ。 (I want the room cleaned up, you know.)

G3.17.3　Volitional form: invitation 〜◯̃う/〜よう/〜ましょう

"Volitional" means "relating to the use of one's will". The volitional form is used to express that the speaker is setting out to do something. In simpler terms, it expresses the idea of invitation, and translates to "Let's/Shall we" in English. Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of conjugations. The volitional conjugations for the two exception verbs are best memorised, there's no simple rule explanation (しよう、来よう).

Both casual and polite volitional forms exist, and the polite form must come at the end of the sentence.

Note that the volitional form only has one tense: starting from the present, looking into the future. It cannot be used with a past tense verb like "食べたよう".

E.g. 今日は何を**しよう**か。 (What shall we do today?)

E.g. 今日は何を**しましょう**か。 (What shall we do today? (polite))

E.g. テーマパークに**行こう**！ (Let's go to the theme park!)

E.g. テーマパークに**行きましょう**！ (Let's go to the theme park! (polite))

E.g. 明日は何を**食べよう**か。カレーを**食べよう**！ (What shall we eat tomorrow? Let's eat curry!)

E.g. 明日は何を**食べましょう**か。カレーを**食べましょう**！ (What shall we eat tomorrow? Let's eat curry! (polite))

G3.17.4　Suggestions {ば/たらどう}

Suggestions are expressed by suffixing 「どう」 to the conditional form (ば; §G3.15.1) or the past conditional たら (§G3.15.2). In English, the literal translation is "If you do <v>, how is it?" and the natural translation is "How about doing <v>?"

E.g. たまにご両親と**話せばどう**？ (How about talking with your parents once in a while?; たまに: occasionally; 話せば is the conditional form of 話す)

E.g. 銀行に**行ったらどう**ですか。 (How about going to the bank?)

G3.18　Quotation: performing actions on relative clauses

We first came across relative clauses in §G2.10.1, where they are used as noun modifiers using the schema <relative verb clause><nn>.

In order to perform an action (e.g. thinking, saying, hearing, variants of each, or even simply referring to it in a bigger complex sentence) on a relative clause, we use the concept of **quotation**, which encapsulates the relative clause into a unit, upon which we can perform actions. This is an important construct in Japanese as the Japanese seldom affirm definite statements, and prefer to express uncertainty or probability, which requires performing corresponding actions (e.g. thinking) on relative clauses.

G3.18.1 Direct quotation 「...」と

The と particle is the quote marker particle, as first seen in §G2.1. The syntax is 「<quote>」と <v>. <v> can be anything like 言う、聞く、呼ぶ (to call)、叫ぶ (to scream)、呟く (to mutter), etc. The <v> doesn't need to immediately follow と; other adverbs and sentence parts-of-speech can come in between, so long as <v> appears in the clause somewhere after と.

E.g. アリスが、「寒い」と言った。 ("Cold", said Alice.)

E.g. 「寒い」とアイリスが田中に言った。 ("Cold", said Alice to Tanaka)

E.g. 「今日は授業がない」と先生から聞いたんだけど。 (It is that I heard from the teacher "there is no class today"...)

G3.18.2 Indirect quotation と、って

Also known as interpreted quotation, indirect quotation quotes *along the lines* of what the speaker actually said. Thoughts and considerations are often expressed as indirect quotes, with the verbs 思う and 考える respectively. The と particle is used here too, except that unconjugated nouns and な-adjective state-of-being must be explicitly declared with な.

In the following examples, the indirect quotation is underlined.

When 何 is used to mean "what", it is read as なに; when it is used to mean "how many", it is read as なん. ([NHK])

E.g. 先生から今日は授業がないと聞いたんだけど。 (I heard from the teacher that there is no class today.; Note the absence of direct quotation marks.)

E.g. カレーを食べようと思ったけど、食べる時間がなかった。 (I thought about setting out to eating curry but didn't have time to eat.; DO NOT confuse なかった and なった: the former is the past-negative of ある, and the latter is the past tense of なる.)

E.g. 今、どこに行こうかと考えている。 (Now, I'm considering where to set out to go.; this is an example of the question marker in indirect quotations, §G3.4.4)

E.g. 彼は、これは何だと言いましたか。 (What did he say this is?; Here, the explicit state-of-being assertion だ is compulsory!)

E.g. 彼は、何と言いましたか。 (What did he say?)

E.g. 彼は、これは何かと言いました。 (He asked what this is.)

E.g. 彼は高校生だと聞いたけど、信じられない。 (I heard that he is a high school student, but I can't believe it.)

The casual version of the と particle is **って**. Specifically, <quote>と<v> can be shortened to <quote>って. The verb is dropped and the speaker will hope that the listener can **understand everything from context**! Usually, the omitted verb after って is 言った ("to say"), so if it's any other verb, don't drop it.

E.g. 今、時間がないと聞いたんだけど、本当？ (I heard you don't have time now, is that true?)

E.g. 今、時間がないって聞いたんだけど、本当？ (I heard you don't have time now, is that true?)

The following are examples of contextual guessing in action. The omitted verb is assumed to be 言った by default.

E.g. 今、時間がないって**けど**、本当？ (You **said** you don't have time now, is that true?)

E.g. 智子^{ともこ}は来年、海外に行くんだ**って**。 (Tomoko **said** that she's going overseas next year.)

E.g. もうお金がない**って**。 (I already **told** you I have no money.)

E.g. え？何^{なん}だ**って**？ (Huh? What did you **say**?)

G3.18.3 って as a replacement for topic particle は

って can be used to talk about practically anything, not just as the informal form of the quotation marker と. It is used everywhere in casual speech, usually to bring up a topic.

E.g. 明日**って**、雨が降るんだ**って**。 (About tomorrow, I hear that it's going to rain.; first って is a replacement for は, second って contains the hidden verb "to hear". A bit weird. I wouldn't use the trailing って like this; I'll just omit it.)

E.g. アリス**って**、すごくいい人でしょう？ (Alice is a very good person, right?; でしょ[う] is the [formal] conjectural form of です.)

G3.19 Definitions and descriptions with the abstract という/って (and slang つう)

言う means to say, and when used in the abstract way, is written as いう. It can be used with the と particle to define, describe and to refer to something itself.

G3.19.1 Definition という

言う has a second meaning, "to call/name". However, since nothing is actually said, it is common to write it in 仮名 only (also ok to write it in 漢字).

E.g. これは、日本語で何**といいます**か。 (What do you call this in Japanese?; 言う here means to call/name)

E.g. 私は、アリス**といいます**。 (I am called Alice.; 言う here means to call/name)

In the following examples, the <called>**という**<thing> schema is used.

E.g. これは、何**という**魚ですか。 この魚は、鯛^{たい}といいます。(What is this fish referred to as? It's known as Tai.)[4]

E.g. ルミネ**という**デパートはどこにあるか、知っていますか。 (Do you know where the department store called "Lumine" is?)

E.g. 「友達」は、英語で「friend」**という**意味です。 (The meaning of "tomodachi" in English is "friend".)

G3.19.2 Referring to relative clause という{の/こと and {こう/そう/ああ/どう}いう{の/こと} and って}

When a relative clause is encapsulated with 「と」, it must be followed by a verb. Sometimes, we want to simply refer to the relative clause in a bigger complex sentence, and in this case the いう verb serves as a generic verb (it can but in this usage it doesn't mean that you're saying the quote). The schema <quote>という{の/こと} is a very common construction.

---

[4]This example can also be written as 「この魚は何といいますか。」([HN]), but could technically be misconstrued as "About this fish, what does it say?". Prefer the <called>**という**<thing> schema.

E.g. 主人公が犯人だった**という{の/こと}**が一番面白かった。 (The most interesting thing was that the main character was the criminal.)

E.g. 日本人はお避けに弱い**という{の/こと}**は本当？ (It is true that Japanese people are weak to alcohol?)

E.g. 独身だ**という{の/こと}**は、嘘だったの？ (Was it a lie that you are single?)

E.g. リブート**という{の/こと}**は、パソコンを再起動する**という{の/こと}**です。(Reboot means to restart your computer.)

E.g. みきさんが洋介別れた**ということだ。ということは、みきさんは、今彼氏がいないということ**？そう。そういうこと。 (I heard that Miki-chan broke up with Yousuke. Does that mean Miki-chan doesn't have a boyfriend now? That's right. That's what it means.; **ということだ specifically indicates hearsay or conjecture about others' feelings**)

If the relative clause can be inferred from context, it can be replaced with a generic way of doing somthing, using the pre-noun adjectivals こういう、そういう、ああいう、どういう (and the こんあ、そんあ、あんあ、どんあ forms too).

E.g. あんたは、いつも**こういう**時に来るんだから、困るんだよ。 (It's because you always come at times like these that I'm trouble.)

E.g. **そういう**人と一緒に仕事をするのは、嫌だよね。 (Doing work together with that type of person would be unpleasant, huh?)

E.g. **ああいう**人と結婚できたら、幸せになれるとお見ます。 (I think if you can marry that type of person, you can become happy.)

E.g. 大学にいかないって、**どういう**意味なの？(What do you mean, "I'm not going to university"?)

Finally, って is not only a short form for と<v> after quotations. It is also a short form for the generic verb という and any following particles, so <quote>という<particles> can be shortened to <quote>って. Again, the speaker will hope that the listener can **understand everything from context**.

E.g. 来年留学する**という{の/こと}**は、智子のこと？ (The studying abroad next year thing, is that Tomoko?)

E.g. 来年留学する**って**智子のこと？ (The studying abroad next year thing, is that Tomoko?)

There's a further abbreviation of って to て (and replacement of と with て, which is slightly easier to say), but this only works for the generic verb. For actually said things, this contraction is invalid! This is stepping into the territory of native lazy speak, I'd say don't worry about this too much.

E.g. **て**ことは、みきさんは、いま彼氏がいない**て**こと？ (both て replaced という; the second one could've also replaced the trailing こと)

E.g. **て**いうか、もう帰らないとだめですけど。(ていうか instead of というか for rephrasing and refining definitions, §G3.19.3)

E.g. みきさんが、明日来ない**って**。 (Miki-chan says she isn't coming tomorrow.; "みきさんが、明日来ないて。" is wrong!)

G3.19.3 Rephrasing and refining definitions with というか、 connector

The definition expression という (§G3.19.1) can be suffixed with the question marker か to add a questioning element, useful for rephrasing or redefining something. This is common in casual speech. As a connector, it tags to the thing that's being rephrased, as in <to rephrase>というか、<rephrase>.

E.g. みきちゃんは、あんたの彼女でしょう？う〜ん、彼女**というか**、友達**というか**、なん**というか**…{} (Miki-chan is your girlfriend, right? Um, you might say girlfriend, or friend, or something…)

E.g. お酒は好き**というか**、ないと生きていけない。(I like alcohol, or rather, I can't live on without it.; 生きていけない is the negative potential form of 生きていく (meaning to live on). This is tricky to parse. The presence of けない correctly hints to us that some negative potential form is in use, but it is not the negative potential form of 生きている (that would be 生きていられない). The presence of いけない might also wrongly lead us to think 生きる is prohibited (that would be 生きてはいけない). The correct way to parse is to recognise that け must be the え form of some く verb, which leads to 生きていく. To disassociate from the prohibition いけない, recognise that the は particle is missing, which is required by the prohibition schema てはいけない.)

E.g. 多分行かないと思う。**というか**、お金がないから、行けない。 (Don't think I'll go. Or rather, I can't go because I have no money.)

E.g. **というか**、もう帰らないとだめですけど。 (Rather than that, I have to go home already.)

G3.19.4 Referring to relative clause with annoyance つう (slang)

The generic verb という can be shortened to **つう**. It is harder to say (violates core slang principle of making things easier to say, §G3.24), but it has a hard, hissing sound, so it is used to convey anger. It is masculine. It can sometimes be further shortened to just つ. つって is the て-from of つう.

E.g. **つうか**^{というか}、なんでお前がここにいん^{いるん}のよ！ (Or rather, why are you here?!)

E.g. 宿題で時間がない**つって**^{と言っ}んのに、みきちゃんとデートしに行ったらしい。 (Although he's saying he doesn't have time because of homework, I hear he went on a date with Miki-chan.; デートする → デートし (stem); らしい: appearance, based on evidence/trustworthy hearsay)

E.g. 明日は試験だぞ。**つっても**、勉強はしてないだろうな。 (Yo, tomorrow's the test. Even if I say that, you probably didn't study anyway, huh?; してない is a contraction of していない (from している))

E.g. だから、違うんだ**つう**の！ (Like I said, you're wrong!)

The annoyance can be further emphasised using **っつう**.

E.g. だから、違うんだ**っつう**の！ (Like I said, you're wrong!)

G3.19.5 Referring to relative clause with exasperation ってば/ったら (slang)

To take annoyance to the next level, the generic verb 「という」's conditional form 「といえば」 (§G3.15.1) and past conditional form 「といったら」 (§G3.15.2) can be abbreviated to ってば or ったら respectively. The (abbreviated) conditionals of という are used to express the exasperation of repeating yourself multiple times, or with someone not listening to you.

E.g. もう行く**ってば**！ (I told you I'm going already!)

E.g. あなたったら、いつも忘れるんだから。 (Because you're always forgetting.)

G3.19.6 Expressing disagreement or dissatisfaction (whiningly) with だって

だって is a conjunction used to express disagreement or dissatisfaction whiningly.

E.g. しないとだめだよ。**だって、**時間がないからできないよ。 (Have to do it, you know. But (even so), can't do it because there is no time.)

E.g. 行かなくかなくてもいいよ。**だって、**みんな行くって。私もいかないと。 (Don't have to go, you know. But (even so), everybody said they're going. I have to go too.)

G3.20 Trialling something out or attempting something

The "try" in English is heavily overloaded. In Japanese, there are separate grammatical expressions for each sense of "try". We've already seen one sense: <v>ようにする, meaning to try to make sure that <v>, as in *putting in effort* to make a habit of <v>.

This section concerns two other senses: *trialling* something out, and *attempting* to do something.

G3.20.1 Trialling something out with the auxiliary verb てみる

This is expressed with <v te>みる, using the auxiliary verb みる (from 見る). Think of it as <v> and see (the outcome). Further conjugations follow rules of the 見る verb. The polite form is てみます.

E.g. お好み焼きを初めて**食べてみた**けど、とてもおいしかった！(I tried eating okonomiyaki for the first time and it was very tasty!)

E.g. お酒を**飲んでみました**が、すごく眠くなりました。 (I tried drinking alcohol and I became extremely sleepy.; 眠く is the adverbial form of 眠い)

E.g. 新しいデパートに**行ってみる**。 (I'm going to check out the new department store.)

E.g. 広島のお好み焼きを**食べてみたい**！(I want to try eating Hiroshima okonomiyaki!; みたい is the desiderative form of みる)

G3.20.2 Attempting something with <v volitional>と{する/<v>}

This is expressed with <u>v volitional></u>とする. Attempting to do something requires exercising the will to set out to do something, hence the involvement of the volitional form. The volitional (and と) together convey the information that we're discussing *attempting.* Further conjugations follow the rules of the verb する.

E.g. 毎日、勉強を**避けようとする**。 (Everyday, she attempts to avoid study.; 避けよう is the volitional form of 避ける.)

E.g. 無ややりに部屋に**入ろうとしている**。 (He is attempting to force his way into the room.)

E.g. 早くな**寝ようとした**けど、結局は徹夜した。(I attempted to sleep early but ended up staying up all night.)

E.g. お酒を**飲もうとした**が、奥さんが止めた。(he tried to drink alcohol but his wife stopped him.)

To describe the attempt itself with another verb <v> (e.g. to think to attempt, to decide to attempt), use <v volitional>と<v>.

E.g. 勉強をなるべく**避けようと思った**。 (I thought I would attempt to avoid as much as possible studying.; なるべく: as much as possible)

E.g. 毎日事務に**行こうと決めた**。 (I decided to attempt to go to the gym everyday.)

G3.21 Giving and receiving objects and favours

Giving and receiving gifts is a big part of Japanese culture. There are four verbs of interest: あげる、やる、くれる、もらう.

The act of giving is associated with the imagery of the gift/favour "going up" to the recipient, and the act of receiving is associated with the imagery of the gift/favour "coming down" from the giver. This leads to the verbs for giving (first person) あげる (上げる), and giving (second person) くれる (whose honorific version of 下さる).

G3.21.1 Giving [as a favour] [て]あげる、[て]やる、[て]くれる

There are three verbs for the act of giving, each with their own use.

- あげる: to give (first person, or third person from giver's POV). The speaker must use あげる when the speaker is giving something, and the auxiliary verb <v te>あげる when the speaker is doing someone a **favour**.

  E.g. 私が友達にプレゼントを**あげた**。 (first person; I gave present to friend.; the sentence ordering can be mixed up, e.g. 「私がプレゼントを友達にあげた。」)

  E.g. これは先生に**あげる**。 (first person; I'll give this to teacher.)

  E.g. 学生がこれを先生に**あげる**。 (third person; The student give this to teacher (looking at it from the giver's POV).; changing POV to that of recipient warrants a change to くれる)

  E.g. 車を**買ってあげる**よ。 (first person; I'll give you the favour of buying the car./I'll buy the car for you.)

  E.g. 代わりに**行ってあげる**。 (first person; I'll give you the favour of going as your substitute.; かわりに: as a substitute for)

  E.g. 友達が父にいいことを**教えてあげた**。 (third person; Friend gave the favour of teaching something good to my dad (looking at it from giver's POV).; changing POV to that of recipient warrants a change to くれる)

- やる: to give (first person), when the receiver is a pet/animal. This is never used for people, but is included here to point out that やる here means "to give" and not "to do" (colloquial).

  E.g. 犬に餌を**やった**？ (Did you give the dog food?; 餌: food for animals)

- くれる: to give (second person, or third person from recipient's POV). The speaker must use くれる when someone else is giving something to the speaker, or the auxiliary verb <v te>くれる when someone else is doing the speaker a favour.

  As the recipient, the speaker uses くれる to emphasise the action of giving, and もらう to emphasise the action of receiving.

  E.g. 友達が私にプレゼントを**くれた**。 (second person; Friend gave present to me.)

  E.g. これは、先生が**くれた**。 (second person; Teacher gave this to me.)

E.g. 車を**買ってくれる**の？ (second person; Will you give me the favour of buying a car?/ Will you buy me a car?)

E.g. 代わりに**行ってくれる**？ (second person; Will you give me the favour of going as my substitute?/Will you go as my substitute?)

E.g. 先生がこれを学生に**くれる**。 (third person; The teacher give this to student (looking at it from the recipient's POV).; changing POV to that of giver warrants a change to あげる)

E.g. 友達が父にいいことを**教えてくれた**。 (third person; Friend gave the favour of teaching something good to my dad (looking at it from recipient's POV).; changing POV to that of giver warrants a change to あげる)

To better illustrate the difference between first and second person (あげる、くれる), compare the following sentences.

E.g. 先生が**教えてあげる**んですか。(Teacher, will you be giving the favour of teaching to (anybody *other* than the speaker)?)

E.g. 先生が**教えてくれる**んですか。(Teacher, will you be giving the favour of teaching to (anybody *including* the speaker)?)

When speaking as the recipient of an action or favour, as a recipient the verb くれる <u>must</u> be used.

E.g. 私が全部食べてあげました。 (I gave the favour of eating it all.; it's incorrect to use 食べてくれる here as "I" am not receiving the favour)

E.g. 友達がプレゼントを私に**くれた**。 (Friend gave present to me.; it's incorrect to use あげた here because "I" am not the giver)

G3.21.2 Receiving [as a favour] [て]もらう

There is only one verb for receiving, もらう. To indicate who the speaker is receiving something from, use the from-marker particler から. The past form もらった is much more commonly used, to indicate that the speaker receive*d* something. The auxiliary verb <v te>もらう is used when the speaker is receiving the favour of someone doing <v te> for their sake.

As the recipient, the speaker uses くれる to emphasise the action of giving, and もらう to emphasise the action of receiving.

Important: for もらう, に marks the <u>giver</u>! <receiver>が, <giver>{に/から}. The subject is performing the receiving, and the target of receiving is the giver.

E.g. 私が友達にプレゼントを**もらった**。 (I received present from friend.)

E.g. 友達からプレゼントを**もらった**。 (I received present from friend.)

E.g. これは友達に**買ってもらった**。(About this, I received the favour from friend of buying this.)

E.g. 宿題を**チェックしてもらいたかった**けど、時間がなくて無理だった。 (I wanted to receive the favour of homework checking, but there was no time and it was impossible.; もらう → もらいたい → もらいたかった)

As a non-typical use case, もらう can be used by the giver speaker if they want to emphasise that they are the one from whom the receiver received something.

E.g. その時計は私から**もらった**のよ。 (He received that watch from me.)

G3.21.3 Soliciting favours (≠ request) with auxiliary verbs てくれる、てもらえる}

Not to be confused with making requests ([§G3.22])! Asking for favours is softer and less direct: "would you do X for me", while making a request is more direct: "please do X".

The previous sections dealt with expressing the *actual event* of giving a gift or favour. The *solicitation* of a positive favour can be expressed as a question with <v te>てくれる？ or <v te>てもらえる？ (note the potential form of もらえる). Because the speaker is the recipient of the favour, あげる is not applicable.

～てくれる is used to ask for favours, but when its imperative form is used, it becomes a command ～てくれ [§G3.22.4].

E.g. あなたが、私に千円を**貸してくれる**？ (Will you give me the favour of lending 1000 yen?; 貸す: to lend)

E.g. 私が、あなたに千円を**貸してもらえる**？ (Can I receive the favour of you lending 1000 yen?)

The examples include the explicit giver and receiver. They are usually omitted if obvious.

E.g. 千円を**貸してくれる**？ (Will you give me the favour of lending 1000 yen?)

E.g. 千円を**貸してもらえる**？ (Can I receive the favour of you lending 1000 yen?)

The request can be made softer by using the negative てくれない？ てもらえない？ (and their polite forms てくれません。、てもらえません。).

E.g. ちょっと静かに**してくれない**？ (Won't you be a little quiet?)

E.g. 感じで**書いてもらえません**か。 (Can you write this in kanji for me?)

The solicitation of a negative favour can be expressed as a question as <v te-negative>でくれる？ or <v te-negative>でもらえる？. Basically negate the <v te> and attach で instead of て, then either くれる？ or もらえる？ as before.

E.g. 全部**食べないでくれません**か。 (Can you not eat it all?)

E.g. 高いものを**買わないでくれる**？ (Can you not buy expensive things?)

G3.22 Making requests (≠ favours)

Not to be confused with asking for favours ([§G3.21.3])! Asking for favours is softer and less direct: "would you do X for me", while making a request is more direct: "please do X".

The following sections discuss four ways to issue requests, in decreasing order of politeness:

$$ください > ちょうだい > なさい > \text{imperative form.}$$

G3.22.1 Honorific requests with ～てください。、～て

ください。 is the most common way of making requests. It is a special conjugation of くださる, the honorific form of くれる [§G3.21.1, §G3.21.3]. ～ください must come at the end of the sentence or relative clause, just like です、ます.

On its own, くれる/ください can mean "please give me/hand me an object" as a transitive verb, using the schema <object>をください.

E.g. それ**をください**。 (Please give me that.)

E.g. それ**をくれる**？ (Can you give me that?)

E.g. 「それ**をください**」とお父さんが言った。 (Father said, "Please give me that".)

ください can also mean "please do for me" as an auxiliary verb, with the schema <v te>ください. Negative requests are made the same way as with solicitation of favours (§G3.21.3), using <v te-negative>でください.

E.g. 漢字で**書いてください**。 (Please write it in kanji.)

E.g. ゆっくり**話してください**。 (Please speak slowly.)

E.g. 落書きき**を書かないでください**。 (Please don't draw graffiti.; 落書き: graffiti)

E.g. ここに**来ないでください**。 (Please don't come here.)

In casual speech, the ください is commonly dropped, so the naked te-form (or naked te-negative form) is used for making requests. Potential confusions with って, which is a short form for the indirect quotation <quote>と<v> §G3.18.2 or the generic verb <quote>という<particles> §G3.19.2.

E.g. 日本語で**話して**。 (Please speak in Japanese.)

E.g. 消しゴムを**貸して**。 (Please lend me the eraser.; 消すゴム: eraser)

E.g. 遠いところに**行かないで**。 (Please don't go to a far place.)

G3.22.2 Casual requests with ～ちょうだい。

頂戴 is 謙譲語 (humble language) for the transitive verb "to receive" and the auxiliary verb "please give me/do for me" (as ～をちょうだい/～てちょうだい). It is usually written using 仮名 alone. When written in 漢字, it is used as part of very formal expressions like 頂戴致します (致す: to do (humble)).

The grammatical rules for ちょうだい are exactly the same as ください, so it must come at the end of the sentence or relative clause. The same schemae apply: <object>をちょうだい and <v te>ちょうだい.

E.g. スプーン**をちょうだい**。 (Please give me the spoon.)

E.g. ここに名前を**書いてちょうだい**。 (Please write your name here.)

G3.22.3 Polite firm requests with ～なさい/～な

なさい is a special honorific conjugation of する, and is a soft (polite) yet firm way of issuing a command. Common example usage situations include a mother scolding her child and a teacher wanting a delinquent student to pay attention. The schema is <v stem>なさい.

E.g. よく**聞きなさい**！ (Listen well!)

E.g. ここで**座りなさい**。 (Sit here.; 座る: to sit)

E.g. **やめなさい**！ (Stop!)

In casual speech, さい can be dropped, leaving <v stem>な. Do not confuse this (e.g. 返信しな) with the imperative-negative form (e.g. 返信するな, §G3.22.4), which is <v dict>な!

E.g. まだいっぱい合うから、たくさん**食べな**。 (There's still a lot, so eat a lot.; 食べな is the contraction of 食べなさい)

E.g. それでいいと思うなら、そう**しな**よ。 (If you think that's fine, then go ahead and do it.; しな is the contraction of しなさい)

G3.22.4 Imperative form

The imperative form is the most direct and is thus rarely used in everyday conversation. It is a coarse type of speech that's only really used in fictional works, or in places where a stern command must be given (e.g. traffic stop signs). Refer to §GA.1 for a full table of conjugations. Here, する、来る <u>and くれる</u> are exceptions (しろ、こい、くれ).

〜てくれる is used to ask for favours (§G3.21.3), but when its imperative form is used, it becomes a command 〜てくれ.

E.g. 好きに**しろ**。 (Do as you please.)

E.g. あっち**行け**！ (Go away!)

E.g. 頑張**れ**！ (Keep at it!; imperative form of 頑張る)

E.g. 早く酒を**持ってきてくれ**。 (Hurry up and bring some alcohol.; 持つ → 持ってくる → 持ってきてくれ)

E.g. 日本語で**話してくれ**。 (Speak in Japanese.)

E.g. 消しゴムを**貸してくれ**。 (Lend me the eraser.; 消すゴム: eraser)

E.g. 遠いところに**行かないでくれ**。 (Don't go to a far place.)

E.g. **止まれ**。 (Stop (road sign).)

E.g. **やめろ**！ (Stop!)

E.g. **死ね**！ (Die!)

Do not confuse this (e.g. 返信するな) with the polite firm request contraction 〜な (e.g. 返信しな, §G3.22.3), whose schema is <v stem>な!

E.g. それを**食べるな**！ (Don't eat that!)

E.g. 変なことを**言うな**！ (Don't say weird things!)

G3.23 The number system

Read the supplementary article on Tofugu.

Finally we reach the point in the textbook that talks about the number systems in the Japanese language. There are three counting languages, based on the origins of the words: 和語 (Japanese language), 漢語 (Chinese origin/Sino-Japanese word), and 外来語 (loanword of Western origin).

The 漢語 counting method is the most common (いち、に、さん、し、よん、ご、ろく、しち、はち、く、じゅう). However, 4 is most often pronounced as よん (from 和語) to avoid the homophone with 死 (death), 7 is most often pronounced as なな (from 和語) to avoid confusion with いち, and 9 is most often pronounced as きゅう to avoid the homophone with 苦 (suffering). Above 10, the reading is almost always よん and なな.

The 和語 counting method (ひ、ふ、み、よ、い、む、な、や、こ、とお) is exclusively used for small numbers from 1 to 10 (and exceptions like 20 days/-th day, 20 years old, sometimes 30 and 40).

The exception is the reading for 4 (よん) and 7 (なな), which are almost always used regardless of how big or small the number is.

The 外来語 counting method follows English pronunciations (ワン、ツー、スリー、フォー、ファイブ、シックス、セブン、エイト、ナイン、テン) and is most notably used for the セット counter (for sets). It is rarely used for pure counting.

It is customary to write large numbers only in numbers as even 漢字 can become difficult to decipher. Even though Japanese uses a new word for every 10^4 (like Chinese, and instead of the 10^3 divide used by English and other languages), when written in numerals, the same 10^3 divide is used. E.g. 一萬 is written 10,000 or １００００.

G3.23.1 Numbers smaller than 1

Zero in Japanese is 零, but more commonly pronounced as either ゼロ or マル. For reading decimals, we say 点 for teh dot, and read each individual number after the decimal point.

E.g. 0.0021 is ゼロ、点、ゼロ、ゼロ、二、一.

For negative numbers, simply say 「マイナス」 before the number.

E.g. -29.0021 is マイナス、二十九、text{点}{てん}、ゼロ、ゼロ、二、一.

G3.23.2 Dates

Read the main article on Wikipedia.

A date is formally written as YYYY 年 MM 月 DD 日. For instance, at the time of writing, today's date is ２０２４年１２月6日.

The date can alternatively be written using the Japanese regnal (counting up from the monarch's ascension) calendar, using the format 元号 n 年 (元号: era name). n starts as 1 in the Gregorian year the era's emperor ascends to the throne (also known as the 元年, "origin year" of era), and counts up to 2 the following Gregorian year. For instance, at the time of writing, today's date is 令和6年１２月6日. The year 令和6年 can be abbreviated to R6 as well. Because the final year in a previous era is the same as the first year in the following era, during years of transition there are two ways to refer to that year (e.g. 2019 is both 平成31 and 令和1).

For the modern eras (starting from 1868), each emperor corresponds to one era. Each emperor inherits their era's 元号 posthumously as <元号>天皇, so it is rude to refer to the emperor using the era name! The reigning emperor is to be referred to as 天皇陛下 ("His Majesty the Emperor") or 今上天皇 ("current emperor").

The eras are summarised in Table 11.

Table 11: Modern eras in the Japanese regnal calendar.

元号	Emperor	元年	Abbreviation range	Notable years
明治 Meiji	睦仁 Mutsuhito	1868・明治1	M1–M45	
大正 Taishō	嘉仁 Yoshihito	1912・明治４５・大正1	T1–T15	
昭和 Shōwa	裕仁 Hirohito	1926・大正１５・昭和1	S1–S64	1945 ＝ 昭和２０
平成 Heisei	明仁 Akihito	1989・昭和６４・平成1	H1–H31	
令和 Reiwa	徳仁 Naruhito	2019・平成３１・令和1	R1–present (令和７)	2020 ＝ 令和2 2025 ＝ 令和7

G3.23.3 Systemic reading changes for counters

Once acquainted with the basic three numbering systems, the next thing is to gain exposure to the various counters (similar to the Chinese language). Pronunciations morph a little based on a largely deterministic set of rules, as shown in Table 12. Detailed examples are in the supplementary PDF.

The known counters 枚、台、秒、番、日、駅 do not encounter these reading changes.

Table 12: Systemic reading changes of numeric counters. The じゅう row always admits じっ, but that pronunciation is rare. †Informal pronunciation.

Numeral 既知	/k/ 個、軒、階、ヶ月、回	/s/ 歳、冊、足	/t/ 着、頭、通り	/h/ 本、杯、匹、発	/f/ 分	/p/ ?	/w/ 羽	/n/ 人、年	(rest) 月、時、時間
何	(なん/g/)軒	(なん/z/)足		なん/b/ (なん/p/)発	なん/p/				
いち	いっ/k/	いっ/s/	いっ/t/	いっ/p/	いっ/p/	いっ/p/			
に									
さん	(さん/g/)軒			さん/b/ (さん/p/)発	さん/p/		さんば		
よん					よん/p/			よ/n/	(し〜)月 よ〜
ご									
ろく	ろっ/k/			ろっ/p/	ろっ/p/	ろっ/p/			
なな									しち〜
はち	(はっ/k/)†	はっ/s/	はっ/t/	はっ/p/	はっ/p/	はっ/p/			
きゅう									く〜
じゅう	じゅっ/k/	じゅっ/s/	じゅっ/t/	じゅっ/p/	じゅっ/p/	じゅっ/p/	じっぽ		
ひゃく	ひゃっ/k/			ひゃっ/p/	ひゃっ/p/	ひゃっ/p/	ひゃくっぱ		
せん	(せん/g/)軒			せん/b/ (せん/p/)発	せん/p/		せんば		
まん				{まん/b/ (まん/p/)発	まん/p/		まんば		

G3.23.4 Ordinals counters 〜目/第〜

Read the discussion on Reddit.

The 目 suffix or 第 prefix can be attached to any of the counting numerals to indicate ordinal position. Note that 第 forces 漢語 readings of certain counters (notably 日 → 日), as shown by example in §SB.24.

Use of the 目 suffix is preferred when:

- in slightly casual settings
- order is not predetermined or fixed (e.g. rankings)
- order is not significant (e.g. rankings)

Use of the 第 prefix is preferred when:

- in slightly formal settings
- the order is predetermined and fixed (e.g. chapters in a book, episodes of a show, questions in a test)
- the order is significant (e.g. first impression, first bank)

G3.24 Casual and slang speech

Just like how English slang is designed for communication efficiency (or style), and is pretty wack when compared to proper standard English, Japanese slang is the same. Slang vocabulary is growing with each new generation. Japanese slang is also heavily influenced by local dialects, though most of the content here is suited for the greater 東京 area.

In Japanese slang, anything goes and rules that apply to written Japanese are often broken, but you have to break them correctly. This is something that requires real practice with real people in real-world situations. Generally, the fundamental goal of slang is to make things easier to say by reducing mouth movement: many sounds are shortened or slurred together for that purpose.

E.g. ここは**つまんない**つまらないから、私んちの家に行こう。 (It's boring here, let's go to my place.; つまらない: boring)

E.g. **ったく**まったく、いつまでこんな**とこ**ところで、グズグズ**すんだ**するんだよ。 (Good grief, when are you going to linger in this kind of place until?; グズグズする: to linger/hesitate)

G3.24.1 Slang sentence ordering
A complete grammatically correct sentence typically ends with a verb. In Japanese slang, this is often bent. In conversations, it's typical to say the first thing that comes up in our thoughts, without thinking about how to structure the whole sentence properly. Often, this first thought is the verb. Once the verb has already out of your mouth, you'd then follow up with an explanation of what you mean: the surrounding context and such.

E.g. それは何？ (proper; What is that?)

E.g. 何それ？ (slang; What is that?; a contraction of 何？それ。)

E.g. 見た？あの人？ (Did you see? That guy?)

E.g. もう食べた？昨日買ったアイス。 (Have you eaten it? The ice cream I bought yesterday.)

G3.24.2 Seeking positive confirmation with じゃない and じゃん
じゃない is an い-adjective that can be used as a question to weakly assert the positive (with a seeking confirmation tone, like the ね particle). It expresses the nuance that you're relatively sure but it's still a question. じゃん is its slang contraction, and can be attached to the end of any sentence and any part-of-speech. regardless じゃない is slightly feminine, while じゃん is neutral.

E.g. サラリーマンだから、残業はたくさんするん**じゃない**？ (Because he's a salaryman, he probably does a lot of overtime (don't you think?).)

E.g. まあ、いい**じゃない**。 (Well, it's probably fine (don't you think?).)

E.g. まあ、いい**じゃん**。 (Well, it's probably fine (don't you think?).)

E.g. ほら、やっぱりレポートを書かないとだめ**じゃん**。 (See, as I thought, you have to write the report.)

E.g. 誰もいないからここで着替えてもいい**じゃん**。 (Since there's nobody, it's probably fine to change here.)

E.g. たかし君は，ここにいる?知らない。あっ!やっぱやっぱり、いる**じゃん**！(Is Takashi-kun here? Dunno. Ah! See, he's here!)

The questioning, seeking confirmation tone can be strengthened by adding the question particle か (**じゃんか**), even in informal settings.

E.g. 駅の近くにカラオケがある**じゃんか**。うん、あそこのすぐ隣となり。(There's a karaoke place near the station, right? Yes, it's right next to it.; すぐ: immediately/directly, 隣となり: next to/adjacent)

G3.24.3 Showing contempt for an action with auxiliary verb やがる

The auxiliary verb やがる (used as <stem>やがる) indicates hatred, contempt or disdain for another's action. This is derogatory and is only used inside of movies, comic books and games.

E.g. あんなやつに**負けやがって**。じゃ、どうすんだよ？ (Losing to a guy like that. Well, what are you going to do?)

E.g. やる気か？だったらさっさと**来やがれ**！ (You want to fight? If so, then hurry up and come on!; 〜やがれ is the imperative form of 〜やがる)

G3.24.4 The ruby{何{なに} mispronunciation and filler word なんか}

※ When used to mean "what", 何 can be read as either なに or なん depending on the word that comes after (e.g. 何色 (what colour)、何人 (how many people)).

何か means "something" and its correct reading is なにか, but in slang it is often contracted to なんか.

E.g. **なんか**何か食べる？

Also, なんか is a filler word like "like…" in English. It has no special meaning, though it may express slight uncertainty about the word that comes <u>immediately after</u>. This filler word is written in 仮名 only and has got nothing to do with the word 何か for "something".

E.g. 今日は、**なんか**<u>忙しいみたい</u>よ。 (I guess he's <u>like busy</u> today.)

E.g. **なんか**ね。お風呂って超気持ちいいよね！ (Like, baths feel really good, huh?)

E.g. お母さんが、**なんか**<u>明日</u>まで戻らないんだってよ。 (Mom said she's not coming back until <u>like tomorrow</u>.)

E.g. **なんか**さ。ボブは、私のこと**なんか**<u>本当</u>に好きかな？ (Hey like, does Bob <u>like really</u> like somebody like me?; さ particle (§G3.25), かな question particle (§G3.25.1)).

G3.25 More sentence ending particles な、さ and gender-specific ones わ、ぞ、ぜ

な、さ are casual forms of the ね、よ particles respectively, which were introduced in §G2.12.

- な: a rough casual form of ね (to express seeking and expectation of agreement, like "right?/ isn't it?" in English), and is preferred when ね sounds too soft or reserved for what you're trying to say.

  E.g. 今、図書館に行くんだよ**な**。うん、なんで？ (You are going to the library now huh? (seeking explanation) Yeah, why?)

  E.g. 日本語は、たくさん勉強したけど**な**。まだ全然わからない。大丈夫よ、きっとわかるようになるからさ。ならいいけど**な**。 (I studied Japanese a lot, right? But I still don't get it at all. No problem, you know? Because you'll become able to understand for sure. If so, it would be good.)

- さ: a very casual form of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like "you know…" in English), and is used like the English filler "like…". It's not a very sophisticated manner of speech, but it's over-used and an easy habit to fall into, just like how "like" is over-used in English.

あの**さ**… うん。この 間 **さ**… うん。ディズニーランドに行ったんだけど**さ**、なんか**さ**、すごい込んでて… うん。何もできなくて**さ**… (Hey…{} Yeah. This one time…{} Yeah. I went to Disney Land and it was really crowded…{} Uh huh. Couldn't do anything…{}; 間 : period of time during, 込む: to be crowded)

The following three are sentence-ending particles used purely for emphasis and have no further special meaning. They make your statements sound much stronger and gender-specific.

- **わ**: feminine emphasis version of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like "you know…" in English).

  E.g. もう時間がない**わ**。 (There is no more time.)

- **ぞ、ぜ**: masculine/"cool" emphasis versions of よ (to express that you're informing something new, like "you know…" in English).

  E.g. おい、行く**ぞ**！ (Hey, we're going!)

  E.g. これで、もう終わりだ**ぜ**。 (With this, it's over already.)

Note that females can use ぞ/ぜ, and males can use わ too, for coolness or softness respectively.

G3.25.1 Question particle かな and gender-specific ones かしら、かい、だい

The な (casual ね) particle can be combined with the question particle か to form かな, typically used when the speaker is considering something. かしら is the feminine version of かな.

E.g. 今日は雨が降る**かな**？ (I wonder if it'll rain today.)

E.g. いい大学に行ける**かな**？ (I wonder if I can go to a good university.)

E.g. いい大学に行ける**かしら**？ (I wonder if I can go to a good university.)

かい (only for yes/no question) and だい (only for open-ended question) are masculine question particles.

E.g. おい、どこに行くん**だい**？ (Hey, where are you going?)

E.g. さきちゃんって呼んでもいい**かい**？ (Can I call you Saki-chan?)

E.g. 一体いつに帰ってくるつもりだったん**だい**？ (What time were you planning on coming home exactly?)

E.g. 俺は土曜日、映画を見に行くけど、一緒に行く**かい**？ (I'm going to see a movie on Saturday, want to go together?)

G3.26 Example conversations

Here are two example conversations to apply what we've learnt in this entire "essential grammar" section.

- アイス：加賀先生、ちょっと質問を聞いてもいいですか。 (Kaga-sensei, is it ok to ask you a question?)
  加賀先生：はい、いいですよ。 (Sure.)

  アリス：「Hello」を日本語で**何と言えば**いいですか。(How do you say "Hello" in Japanese?; quotation + conditional form of 言う)
  加賀先生：そうね。だいたい、「こんにちは」**と言うと思います**よ。ただし、書く時は「こ

んにちわ」**じゃなくて**、「こんいちは」と書かなくてはなりません。 (Well, mostly, I think people say "konnichiwa". However, when you write it, it is not "konnichiwa"; you must write "konnichiha".; nested quotation + quotation; negative sequence of states)

アリス：そうですか。他に何かいい表現はありますか。(Is that so? Are there any other good expressions?; 他: other (Do not confuse with 彼!) "Other something good expression, exist?")

加賀先生：これも**覚えといて**ね。朝は、「おはよう」と言うの。でも、上の人には「おはようございます」と言ってください。 (Do remember this too (in preparation for the future). In the morning, everybody says "ohayou". But, to a higher person, please say "ohayou-gozzaimasu".; 覚える → 覚えておく → 覚えとく → 覚えといて~~ください~~ (te-form request of casual form of 覚えておく))

アリス：はい、わかりました。間違えないようにします。いい勉強になりました！(Ok, I got it. I'll try not to make that mistake. That was very informative ("it became good study")!)

- 洋介：お！アリスだ。あのね、質問を聞いてもいい？ (Oh! It's Alice. Hey, can I ask you a question?)
  アリス：何？ (What's up?)

  洋介：ちょっと英語を**教えてもらいたい**んだけどさ、もし時間があれば、教えてくれない？ (I want to learn English, so if you have time, can you teach me? 教えてもらいたい is the desiderative form of 教えてもらう.)
  アリス：え？英語を勉強するの？ (Huh? You're going to study English?)

  洋介：うん、アメリカで留学**してみたいなと思って**ね。去年も**行こうとした**けど、お金がなくて… (Yeah, I was thinking about trying out studying abroad in America. I attempted going last year too, but I didn't have money.; 留学してみたい + な sentence ending particle + quotation + 思って; 行こうとする: to attempt to go)
  アリス：そうなの？いいよ。いつ教えてほしいの？(Really? No problem. When do you want me to teach you?)

  洋介：いつでもいいよ。 (Anytime is good.)
  アリス：じゃ、来週の木曜日からはどう？ (Then, how about from next Thursday?)

  洋介：うん、いいよ。ありがとう！ (Yeah, that's good. Thank you!)
  ありす：勉強を**怠けたり、来なかったりしないで**ね。 (Don't shirk on your studies or not come, ok?; 怠ける: to laze)

  洋介：そんなことしないよ！ (I won't do anything like that!)

G4　Special expressions

This section is named "special expressions" because except the first few subsections, most of the grammar here applies to more specific use-cases. However, this "special expressions" section as as whole is necessary for everyday conversations.

G4.1　Causative, passive and causative-passive forms

We finally learn the last three major verb conjugations.

G4.1.1　Causative form 〜◯̃{せる/す}

The causative form of verbs indicate that someone *was made to* perform the verb. It has two senses: making somebody do something, and letting someone to do something. Disambiguation between the two senses is based on context!

When the causative form is used with あげる/くれる, it almost always means to "let someone do". Otherwise, it usually means "make someone do".

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All causative form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

When listening, 〜◯̃せ is the signal for passive voice, though for る-verbs there is potential conflict with the potential form.

E.g. 全部**食べさせた**。　(Made/let someone eat it all.)

E.g. 全部**食べさせてくれた**。　(Let someone eat it all.)

E.g. 先生が学生に宿題をたくさん**させた**。　(Teacher made students do lots of homework.)

E.g. 先生が質問をたくさん**聞かせてくれた**。(Teacher let someone ask lots of questions.; 聞く → 聞かせる (causative) → 聞かせてくれる (to give the favour))

E.g. 今日は仕事を**休ませてください**。　(Please let me rest from work today.; 休む → 休ませる (causative) → 休ませてください (desiderative of causative, "let-do" sense))

E.g. その部長は、よく長 時間**働かせる**。　(That manager often makes people work long hours.; 働く (to work) → 働かせる (causative))

When *asking* for permission to let someone do something (including letting yourself do something), it's more common to use the 「〜てもいい」 grammar (§G3.16.3).

E.g. お手洗いに**行かせてくれません**か。(Can you let me go to the toilet? (sounds like a prisoner, even in English))

E.g. お手洗いに**行ってもいい**ですか。　(Is it ok to go to the toilet?)

In very rough/casual slang, the causative form may be expressed with the う-verb ending 〜す. For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All causative form verbs are う-verbs. Further conjugations follow う-verb rules (with す ending).

E.g. 同じことを何回も**言わす**^(言わせる)な！(Don't make me say the same thing again and again!)

E.g. お腹空いているんだから、なんか**食べさしてくれ**^(食べさせてくれ)よ。　(I'm hungry, so let me eat something.; 食べる → 食べさす → 食べさしてくれる → 食べさしてくれ (imperative))

G4.1.2 Interlude I: passivisation, direct and indirect/adversative passives

Read the supplementary materials on [TFG1] and [TFG2].

There is no such thing as a "suffering passive": there is nothing in the language that indicates that someone is suffering from a passive verb. The "suffering" connotation comes the passive verb indicating that the experiencer has no control over the performed action. ([TK])

Note that parts-of-speech (e.g. object, subject) are purely grammatical (syntactic) roles. An entity being the performer of the action or the receiver of the action's effects are semantic roles. Semantic roles do not change under passivisation (otherwise the sentence's meaning changes), whereas grammatical roles may change.

(SL) In English, passivisation can only be applied to a sentence containing a transitive verb. When it occurs, <u>the object is promoted to the subject position</u>, and the subject is demoted to an oblique (a non-required argument).

In Japanese, passivisation is a bit more flexible: intransitive verbs can be passivised too.

We now distinguish between the direct and indirect/adversative passives *in Japanese*.

- **Direct passive (transitive only)**: used to express that the <u>transitive</u> verb was done to someone/something (subject experiencer; marked by が), by someone (origin oblique/optional performer; marked by に). The effect that the action has on the experiencer is very obvious, since the verb is done directly to them (promoted to subject grammatical role). The subject (demoted to an oblique) is often omitted as it's not important. The Japanese direct passive is equivalent to the English passive.

  The semantic performer is the syntactic origin after passivisation and marked by にに. This usage of に as *origin* rather than desstination is very similar to もらう's usage (§G3.21.2, [TFG]), since the passive subject is the receiver (experiencer) in the transaction (action).

  E.g. ピカソに**キスされた**。 (I was kissed by Picasso.)

  E.g. タバコが**吸われた**。 (A cigarette was smoked.)

- **Indirect passive (both transitive and intransitive)**: used to express that someone (origin performer; marked by に) did a <u>transitive/intransitive verb</u>, involving an optional direct object (only for transitive verbs; marked by を), and it had an effect on someone (experiencer; marked by は/が; [TK]). There is no equivalent in English. The adverastive nuance is not guaranteed, though very likely present in indirect passive sentences.

  E.g.（私は）（あのおじさんに）タバコを吸われた。(I got smoked on (by that man).; [TFG1])

  In the above example, the passive verb is 吸われた, the experiencer is me, and the performer is あのおじさん (marked by origin particle に). The indirect passive emphasises that this act of smoking was done to me, and that I did not have control over it, creating the nuance that the act was a nuisance.

  E.g. ブラット・ピットに目の前でタバコを**吸われて**、気絶_{きぜつ}するかと思った。(I got smoked on by Brad Pit right in front of me, and I thought I was going to faint.; 気絶_{きぜつ}: loss of consciousness; more natural translation would be "Brad Pitt smoked right in front of me, and I thought I was going to faint."; [TFG1])

In the above example, the indirect passive is used, but the effect may not be adversative depending on the context: I could be fainting from the smoke, or from the fact that it's Brad Pitt.

Except for a few cases, the indirect passive is always formed with verbs that were intentionally performed by some*one*. The performer of the verb (marked by に) is therefore usually a person. Only (some) weather-related verbs are acceptable exceptions to this rule, where the performer is a weather-related object. More details in §G4.2.3.

E.g. 私は~~本に~~頭に~~落ちられた。~~ ~~(My head was fallen on by a book.; [TFG1]) Unnatural sentence: the performer should not be an object.~~

E.g. 突然雨に**降られた**。 (All of a sudden, I was rained on.; 降る is intransitive; [TFG1])

E.g. 花子が 隣 の学生にピアノを朝まで弾かれた。(Hanako had the student next to her play the piano on her until morning.; a more natural translation is "Hanako was adversely affected by the student next to her playing the piano until morning."; [Wiki])

For a deeper treatment of the passive voice, refer to the postlude (§G4.2).

G4.1.3 Passive form 〜◯れる

The passive voice in Japanese is often used in written essays and articles. Read more about passivisation in §G4.1.2.

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All passive form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules. Note that for る-verbs and 来る, the passive form is identical to the potential form (〜られる); disambiguation requires context and is otherwise impossible.

When listening, 〜◯れ is the signal for passive voice, though for る-verbs there is potential conflict with the potential form.

In Japanese, the standard SOV sentence schema is <subject>が<object>を<transitive v>, or <performer>が<experiencer>を<transitive v> in semantic terms. After passivisation into the **direct passive**, it becomes <performer>に<experiencer>が<transitive v passive form>. Notice that the semantic performer is now the syntactic origin (marked by に), and the semantic experiencer is now the syntactic subject (marked by が/は). This is very similar to もらう's usage of に as a origin particle (§G3.21.2, [TFG]), since the passive subject is the receiver (experiencer) in the transaction (action).

E.g. ポリッジが誰かに**食べられた**！ (The porridge was eaten by somebody!)

E.g. みんなに変だと**言われます**。 (I am told by everybody that (I'm/it's) strange.)

E.g. 光の速さを超えるのは、不可能だと**思われる**。 (Exceeding the speed of light is thought to be impossible.)

E.g. この教科書は多くの人に**読まれている**。 (This textbook is being read by a large number of people.)

E.g. 外国人に質問を**聞かれた**が、答えられなかった。 (I was asked a question by a foreigner, but I couldn't answer.)

E.g. このパッケージには、あらゆる物が**含まれている**。 (Everything is included in this package.; あらゆる: all, 含む: to contain)

‰ Because an indirect sentence is more polite in Japanese, the passive voice is used to show a level of politeness above the normal ます form. In a similar sense to how it's more polite to address someone indirectly, and how it's more polite to ask negative questions than positive ones (§G3.4.2), the passive form makes the sentence less direct because the subject (now the experiencer) does not directly perform the action. In increasing levels of politeness of expressing "what will you do?":

1. (active voice) どうする？
2. (active voice, polite) どうしますか。
3. (passive voice, polite) どうされますか。
4. (??? voice, honorific, S???) どうなさいますか。
5. (??? voice, honorific, less certainty, S???) どうなさいますでしょうか。

With increasing indirection and politeness, the sentence grows longer and longer.

E.g. 領 収 証 はどう**されます**か。 (What about your receipt?)

E.g. 明日の会議に**行かれる**んですか。 (Are you going to tomorrow's meeting?; passive voice deliberately used for politeness)

G4.1.4 Caustive-passive form 〜◯̃せられる

The causative-passive form is used to express the idea that the action of "making someone do something" was performed to that person, or in short, the idea that someone was made to do something. The verb is first conjugated to the causative then the passive, never the other way round.

For detailed conjugation rules, refer to §GA.1. All passive form verbs are る-verbs. Further conjugations follow る-verb rules.

The causative-passive form is a variant of the passive voice, so the に particle marks the *origin*, i.e. the performer of the action.

When listening, 〜◯̃せられ is the signal for causative-passive voice.

E.g. 朝ごはんは食べたくなかったのに、**食べさせられた**。 (Despite not wanting to eat breakfast, I was made to eat it.)

E.g. 日本では、お酒を**飲ませられる**ことが多い。 (In Japan, the event of being made to drink is numerous.)

E.g. あいつに二時間も**待たせられた**。 (I was made to wait 2 hours by that guy.)

E.g. 親に毎日宿題を**させられる**。 (I was made to do homework everyday by my parents.; 親: parents)

The following shortened causative-passive form only exists for う-verbs with ∗＼{す}-ending.

In very rough/casual slang, the shortened causative-passive form (derived from the shortened causaive form, §G4.1.1) may be used. This form only exists for う-verbs with the exception of those with a す-ending in dictionary form, because wherever the shortened causative form ends with 〜さす, the shortened causative-passive form would have 「…さされる」 in it, which is not allowed.

E.g. 学生が廊下に**立たされた**立たせられた。 (The stuednt was made to stand in the hall.; 立つ: to stand)

E.g. 日本では、お酒を**飲まされる**^(飲ませられる)ことが多い。 (In Japan, the event of being made to drink is numerous.)

E.g. あいつに二時間も**待たされた**^(待たせられた)。 (I was made to wait 2 hours by that guy.)

G4.2 Postlude: a deep dive into passivisation in Japanese

Read the article chain starting from [TMJK1].

This website is a teachers' reference, and I obtained it from a Quora answer. For the interest of time and for the sake of not losing focus on the main task at hand (learning how passivisation works in Japanese), I'll be taking notes after translating the website. I hope that one day I'll be able to read such websites directly without the help of translation. What's holding me back at the moment is lacking a fair bit of grammar knowledge and a lot of vocabulary knowledge…

G4.2.1 Introduction into the passive voice ruby{受動態{じゅ|どう|たい}}

Read the main article on [TMJK1].

The passive voice (受身、受動態) has multiple interpretations. There are distinct subsets of passive voice (expressions *A* and *B* on TMJK's Venn diagram) that are highly similar. At the beginner level, where the students' grammar and vocabulary knowledge are very limited, it is not possible to cover the nuances between similar usages. Instead, we'll first study parts of *A* and *B* that are as far away as possible from where they may overlap, such that their differences are more perceivable and gentler to learn. Some beginner-level grammar will be used; such grammar is not meant for natives but is useful for non-native learners.

There are over ten types of passive voice, if we want to pedantically differentiate them all.

G4.2.2 Classifications of the passive voice

Read the main article on [TMJK2].

The reason passive voices are difficult for students is that they have to learn so many forms in one day, at one go.

From the みんなの日本語 textbook, there are six:

1. 私は部長に**褒められました**。 (I was praised by my boss.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))

   私は部長に仕事を**頼まれました**。 (I was requested by my boss to do work.; 頼む: to request/ entrust to (transitive))

2. 私は誰かに足を**踏まれました**。 (My foot was stepped on by someone. 踏む: to step on (transitive))

   私は母に漫画の本を**捨てられました**。 (My manga books were thrown away by my mom.; 捨てる: to throw away (transitive))

3. 大阪で展覧会が**開かれます**。 (The exhibition will be held in Osaka.; 開く: to open (business) (intransitive))

   大阪で国際会議が**行われます**。 (An international conference will be held in Osaka.; 行う: to perform/carry out (transitive))

4. この美術館は来月**壊されます**。 (This art museum will be demolished next month.; 壊す: to break/demolish (transitive))

この美 術 館は２００年前に**建てられました**。 (建てる: to construct (transitive))

5. 日本の車はいろいろな国へ**輸 出 されています**。 (Japanese cars are exported to many countries.; 輸 出 する: to export (transitive))

   洗濯機はこの工 場 で**組み立てられています**。 (Washing machines are assembled in this factory.; 組み立てる: to assemble (transitive))

6. 「源氏物 語 」は 紫 式部によって**書かれました**。 (The Tale of Genji (Heian-period classic) was written by Murasaki Shikibu.; 書く: to write (transitive))

   電話はグラハム・ベルによって**発明されました**。 (The telephone was invented by Graham Bell.; 発明する: to invent (transitive))

There are two particles 「に」 and 「より」 associated with the passive voice. To learn them both in one day is asking too much from learners. みんなの日本語 also misses out passive intransitive verbs such as 「雨に降られた。」.

From the 大地 textbook, there are four:

1. 私は先生に**呼ばれました**。 (I was called by my teacher.; 呼ぶ: to call out to (transitive))

   私は先生に**注意されました**。 (I was reprimanded by my teacher.; 注意する: to reprimand)

2. (†) 私は子どもにカメラを**壊されました**。 (I had my camera broken on by my child.; 壊す: to break/demolish (transitive))

   (†) 私は雨に**降られました**。 (I was rained on.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall (intransitive))

3. 大阪で会議が**開かれます**。 (The meeting is held in Osaka.; 開く: to open (business) (intransitive))

   金沢は小 京 都と**言われています**。 (Kanazawa is said to be a Little Kyoto (small town with historical features reminiscent of Kyoto).; 言う: to be called/defined (transitive))

4. 源氏物 語 は 紫 式部によって**書かれました**。 (The Tale of Genji (Heian-period classic) was written by Murasaki Shikibu.; 書く: to write (transitive))

Here, (†) are examples of the intransitive passive. The 「～と言われています」 construct (言う → 言われる (passive) → 言われている (progressive passive) → 言われています (polite progresive passive)) is very often used in the passive voice ("it is said that…").

The burden on learners can be significantly reduced by dividing the teaching up into parts. For the six forms in みんなの日本語, we can group them into two groups: $\{1, 2\}$ and $\{3, 4, 5, 6\}$. The first two kinds involve emotion, while the last four don't.

Furthermore, a distinct feature of the Japanese passive voice is the adversative passive interpretation (迷惑の受身). However, whether an action is adversative depends less on the sentence structure, and much more on the meaning of the verb used. There is therefore nothing inherently in the grammatical rules and syntax that suggest adversativity. The passive voice can be used for *both* positive and negative emotions, even if the passive voice always conveys the idea that the experiencer has no control over the action and its performer.

E.g. 私は先生に**褒められました**。(non-adversative; I was praised by my teacher.; 褒める: to praise (transitive))

E.g. 私は先生に**しかられました**。 (adversative; I was scolded by my teacher.; しかる: to scold (transitive))

To start off, fix the experiencer to always be "me", and fix the sentence structure to be 「私は<performer>に<verb passive>」. The experiencer will change later as we progress further (§G4.2.4).

G4.2.3 The grammar rules of passives

Read the main articles on [TMJK3] and [TMJK4].

For the sake of ease of understanding, we categorise the passive voice into two broad groups:

- **直接受身のグループ** (direct passive group). Broadly speaking, in this group, the subject (suffixed by は/が) has something done to them <u>directly</u> by someone (suffixed by に).

  Members include:

  ‣ 直接受身 (direct passive), a.k.a. 直接対象の受身 (direct target passive)、相手の受身 (other party passive)

  <experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> IS the promoted object of the corresponding active voice sentence.

  ‣ 中立の受身 (neutral passive)

- **間接受身のグループ** (indirect passive group). Broadly speaking, in this group, the subject (suffixed by は/が) has something done to them <u>indirectly</u> by someone (suffixed by に).

  Members include:

  ‣ 間接受身 (indirect passive)

  <experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

  ‣ 迷惑の受身 (adversative passive)

  ‣ 持ち主の受身 (possessive passive)

  <experiencer-owner>{が/は}<performer>に<ownee>を<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

  ‣ 自動詞の受身 (intransitive passive)

  <experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v intransitive passive>.

At the end of the day, from this landscape, the syntax is mostly the same.

We now look at the direct, indirect, possessive and indirect passives more closely. Here are their definitions (定義).

1. **直接受身** (direct passive).

   <experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> IS the promoted object of the corresponding active voice sentence.

   - *There is a corresponding active voice sentence.*
     [能動文] 太郎はジョンを殴った。 (Taro punched John.; 殴る: to punch (transitive))

[受動文] ジョンは太郎に殴られた。 (John was punched by Taro.; 殴る: to punch
(transitive))

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed (depends on the passivised verb).*

  [迷惑の意味がない] 私は先生に褒められた。 (I was praised by my teacher.; 褒める: to
  praise (transitive))

  [迷惑の意味がある] 私は先生にしかられた。 (I was scolded by my teacher.; しかる: to
  scold (transitive))

- *Exists in English.*

  Because the direct passive is equivalent to the English passive, the direct passive is easy
  for English speakers to understand.

2. 間接受身 (indirect passive).

When translating indirect passives into English, purposely place the origin at the end of the
sentence as "by <origin>", then the rest of the sentence is usually expressed as "<experi-
encer> got <v passive> on by <origin>".

<experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v transitive passive>, where <experiencer> is NOT
the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

  [能動文] 隣の席の人が大声で話した。 (The person in sitting next to me spoke loudly.;
  話す: to speak (transitive))

  [受動文] 私は隣の席の人に大声で話された。 (I was spoken to loudly by the person
  sitting next to me.; 話す: to speak (transitive))

  The passive sentence contains the experiencer semantic role 「私」 (syntactic subject). In
  the closest equivalent active sentence, this subject does not take on the semantic experi-
  encer role (of the verb 話す). Another way to think about this: the semantic experiencer
  (syntactic subject) in the passive sentence was not promoted from a grammatical object
  of any active sentence. Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

  The *indirect* passive is named as such because 「私」 was not directly affected by verb
  「話す」, only *indirectly* so.

- *Adversative nuance is guaranteed.*

  See above point.

- *It is difficult to translate to English.*

  The indirectness of the indirect passive has no equivalent in English.

3. 持ち主受身 (possessive passive). The possessive passive is sometimes grouped together with
   間接受身のグループ, and sometimes consideredto be in a category of its own.

<experiencer-owner>{が/は}<performer>に<ownee>を<v transitive passive>, where <ex-
periencer> is NOT the promoted object of any active voice sentence.

E.g. (私は)スリに財布を取られた。(My wallet was stolen by a pickpocket.; スリ: pickpocket,
取る: to steal (transitive))

The *possessive* passive is named as such because the direct object (suffixed by を) of the passive verb belongs to the subject (suffixed by は/が).

- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

  [<ruby>能動文<rt>のうどうぶん</rt></ruby>] 弟が**私の携帯を**<ruby>壊<rt>こわ</rt></ruby>した。 (My younger brother destroyed my cell phone.; <ruby>携帯<rt>けいたい</rt></ruby>: mobile phone; <ruby>壊<rt>こわ</rt></ruby>す: to break/destroy (transitive))

  [<ruby>受動文<rt>じゅどうぶん</rt></ruby>] **私は**弟に**携帯を**<ruby>壊<rt>こわ</rt></ruby>された。 (I got my cell phone destroyed by my brother.; <ruby>壊<rt>こわ</rt></ruby>す: to break/destroy (transitive))

  In the possesive passive sentence, the experiencer semantic role is 「私」 (syntactic subject). In the closest equivalent active sentence, 「私」 is merely a label to <ruby>財布<rt>さいふ</rt></ruby> and does not take on the experiencer semantic role. Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed (depends on the passivised verb).*

  [迷惑の意味がある] **（私は）**田中さんに**日本語を**けなされた。 (adversative; I got my Japanese disparged by Tanaka-san.; けなす: to speak ill of/disparage (transitive))

  [迷惑の意味がない] **（私は）**田中さんに**日本語を**<ruby>褒<rt>ほ</rt></ruby>められた。 (non-adversative; I got my Japanese praised by Tanaka-san.; <ruby>褒<rt>ほ</rt></ruby>める: to praise (transitive))

Some usage pointers.

- When the passive sentence involves body parts of the owner, the direct passive is unnatural.

  [自動詞の受身、自然]（私は）<ruby>隣<rt>となり</rt></ruby>の人に<ruby>満員<rt>まんいん</rt></ruby>電車で<ruby>足<rt>あし</rt></ruby>を<ruby>踏<rt>ふ</rt></ruby>まれた。(I got my foot stepped on on me by someone next to me on a fully-booked train.; more natural translation is "My foot was stepped on by someone next to me on a fully-booked train." <ruby>踏<rt>ふ</rt></ruby>む: to step on (transitive))

  [直接受身、不自然] 私の足が踏まれた。

- When the passive sentence involves possessions of the owner, the direct passive is also possible.

  [自動詞の受身、自然]（私は）田中さんにパソコンを<ruby>壊<rt>こわ</rt></ruby>された。 (I got my computer broken on me by Tanaka-san.; <ruby>壊<rt>こわ</rt></ruby>す: to break/destroy (transitive))

  [直接受身、自然] 私のパソコンが田中さんに<ruby>壊<rt>こわ</rt></ruby>された。 (My computer was broken by Tanaka-san.)

- When the passive sentence involves parties related to the owner, the direct passive is also possible.

  [自動詞の受身、自然]（私は）先生に息子をけなされた。 (I got my child disparaged on me by his teacher.; けなす: to speak ill of/disparage (transitive))

  [直接受身、自然] 私の息子は先生にけなされた。 (My child was disparaged by his teacher.)

4. **<ruby>自動詞<rt>じどうし</rt></ruby>の<ruby>受身<rt>うけみ</rt></ruby>** (intransitive passive).

  <experiencer>{が/は}<performer>に<v intransitive passive>.

- *There is no corresponding active voice sentence.*

  Similar explanation to the other members of the indirect passive group. The experiencer semantic role is present in the intransitive passive (suffixed by は/が), but completely absent in the closest equivalent active sentences: active intransitive verbs only involve a subject (which would be the origin of the passivised intransitive verb, not the experiencer). Therefore, there is no corresponding active sentence.

- *Adversative nuance is not guaranteed.*

  [迷惑の意味がある] 恋人に逃げられた。 (adversative; I had my lover run away on me.; 逃げる: to run away (intransitive))

  [迷惑の意味がある] 子どもに泣かれた。 (adversative; I had my child cry on me.; 泣く: to cry (intransitive))

  [迷惑の意味がある] 雨に降られた。 (adversative; I had the rain fall on me.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall)

  [迷惑の意味がない] 綺麗な女性に微笑まれて、ドキドキした。 (non-adversative; I got smiled on by a pretty lady, and my heart pounded.; 微笑む: to smile (intransitive))

  [迷惑の意味がない] 私は風に吹かれていた。 (non-adversative; I got blown on by the wind.; 吹く: (of the wind) to blow (intransitive))

  [迷惑の意味がない] 彼女に甘えられると、結構嬉しい。(non-adversative; If I get fawned on by her, I will be fairly happy.; 甘える: to fawn on/give lots of attention and praise (intransitive verb))

  [迷惑の意味がない] 先生に喜ばれた。 (non-adversative; I got being pleased on by the teacher.; 喜ぶ: to be delighted (intransitive))

Some usage pointers.

- Among intransitive verbs, non-volitional ones (非意志) are harder and less natural to passivise. A notable exception is 降る for precipitation/ash.

  [非意志、自然] 雨に降られた。 (I had the rain fall on me.; 降る: (of precipitation/ash) to fall (intransitive)))

  [非意志、不自然] 雨に止まれた。 (止む: to cease/stop/be over (intransitive))

  [非意志、不自然] ドアに急に開かれました。

  [非意志、不自然] 石に突然、落ちられました。

  [非意志、不自然] 電気に消えられて、困りました。

  [非意志、不自然] 涙に不意に出られて、恥ずかしかった。

  Even though all these attempted intransitive passive verbs have the adversative nuance, they are nonetheless considered unnatural. (Perhaps for a reason only accessible to higher level learners…)

G4.2.4 Indirect passives to convey adversative emotions, and involving a third person subject 間接受身のグループ

Read the main article on [TMJK5].

Indirect passives can be purposefully used to convey negative feelings evoked from an indirect action.

- If the speaker has only a general relationship with 田中さん or アンさん, the speaker state say the following objectively (客観的事実を述べます):
きゃっかんてき

  [A1、能動文] アンさんは海外へ引っ越した。 (Ann-san moved abroad.; 引っ越す: to change residence (intransitive))

  [B1、能動文] 田中さんはアンさんに花束を贈った。 (Tanaka-san gifted Ann-san a bouquet.; 贈る: to gift (transitive))

- However, if the speaker likes アンさん and sees 田中さん as a love rival, then the actions of アンさん and 田中さん in A1 and B1 would be unpleasant, even if their actions did not *directly* affect the speaker. The speaker would therefore use the *indirect* passive voice to express their feelings.

  [A2、受動文] （私は）あんさんに海外へ引っ越されて、寂しくてたまらない。(I got Ann-San moved abroad on me, and I feel unbearably lonely.; たまらない: intolerable/unbearable)

  [B2、受動文] (アンさんに花束を贈ろうと思っていたのに、)（私は）田中さんに先に贈られてしまった。(Despite me thinking of gifting a bouquet to Ann-sann, I got Tanaka-san gifting before me on me.; しまう: to do/happen unintentionally (AUX))

The subject/experiencer in passive sentences is a person, and is most commonly 「私」. If so, it is often omitted (省略されます). If the subject/experiencer is not a human, then it would be something similar to a person, such as an organisation a person belongs to.
しょうりゃく

In §G4.2.2, we fixed the subject/experiencer to 「私」. We now vary this. The subject/experiencer can be a third person/party (第三者) that is neither the speaker nor the origin/performer of the passivised action. To do this, simply state the third party subject explicitly, suffixed with は/が.
だいさんしゃ

- [C1#、受動文] **田中さんは**アルバイトに休まれました。 (Tanaka-san had a day off taken on him by the part-timer.; 休む: to take a day off (intransitive))

  [D1#、受動文] E.g. **川口さんは**友達に手紙を読まれました。 (Kawaguchi-san got his letter read on him by his friend.; 読む: to read (transitive))
  かわぐち

  However, the above sentences would sound incomplete to the native ear. They are missing the *feelings* of the third party.

  (The # here mean "may be acceptable to some readers"; courtesy of SL.)

- [C2、受動文] **田中さんは**アルバイトに休まれて、**とても困りました**。 (Tanaka-san had a day off taken on him by the part-timer, and was very troubled.; 休む: to take a day off (intransitive))

  [D2、受動文] **川口さんは**友達に手紙を読まれて、**恥ずかしい思いをしました**。 (Kawaguchi-san got his letter read on him by his friend, and he felt embarrassed unintentionally.; 読む: to read (transitive), しまう: to do/happen unintentionally (AUX))
  かわぐち

  When the feelings of the aggrieved party is made explicit, the indirect passive flows more naturally.

G4.2.5 The three passive voice particles に、から、によって

Read the main articles on [TMJK5], [TMJK6], [TMJK7].

The に particle marks the origin/performer of the passive voice. The origin/performer in the indirect passive group can only be suffixed by に.

[間接受身] 私は友達に夜遅く遊びに来られました。 (I got visited for playing late at night on by my friend.; 来る: to come (intransitive))

In direct passive sentences, three particles are possible: に、から、によって. The default particle is still に, and there are some cases where に can't be used, or another particle is more suitable.

Some rules of thumb:

- For passivised verbs that act on people, express the origin's emotion, or have a sense of mobility or direction, both に、から can be used to mark the origin/performer.

  Examples of verbs expressing emotion: 愛する、憎む (to hate)、好む (to like)、嫌う、恐れる (to fear)、惜しむ (to regret/be stingy)、尊敬する、軽蔑する (to scorn)、怪しむ (to suspect).

  Examples of verbs with a sense of mobility or direction: 招待する (to invite)、呼ぶ、誘う (to invite/tempt), 振り向く (to turn around)、迎える (to go out and greet).

  [直接受身] 私は先生**{に/から}**褒められた。 (act on people; I was praised by my teacher.; 褒める: to praise (transitive); Both に、から are possible, によって is more formal and not used here.)

  [直接受身] ジュリエットはロミオ**{に/から}**愛されました。 (emotion; Juliet was loved by Romeo.; 愛する: to love (transitive))

  [直接受身] 周恩来は今も中国の人々**{に/から}**尊敬されている。(emotion; Zhou Enlai is still respected by the Chinese people today.; 尊敬する: to respect (transitive))

  [直接受身] たなかさんは、刑事**{に/から}**怪しまれた。 (emotion; Tanaka-san is suspected by the detective.; 怪しむ: to suspect (transitive))

  [直接受身] 私は先生**{に/から}**声をかけられた。 (mobility/direction; I was called out to by my teacher.; 声をかける: to call out to (expression/intransitive))

  [直接受身] 突然、友達**{に/から}**呼び止められた。 (mobility/direction; Suddenly, I was stopped by my friend.; 呼び止める: to call and stop sb/sth (transitive))

  [直接受身] あまりにひどい恰好だったので、みんな**{に/から}**振り向かれた。 (mobility/direction; Because I looked very bad, I was turned around to by everyone.; 恰好/格好: appearance, 振り向く: to turn around (expression/transitive))

  [直接受身] 田中選手はチームメイト**{に/から}**温かく迎えられた。(emotion; The contestant Tanaka was warmly welcomed by his teammates.; 迎える: to go out and greet (transitive))

- For passivised verbs that refer to a give-receive transaction, because に already marks the receiver, it cannot be used again in the same sentence to mark the origin (giver) in the same transaction. から must be used to mark the origin.

  Examples of verbs related to give-receiving: 授与する (to award)、渡す (to hand over)、送る (to send)、贈る (to gift)、与える (to bestow/give to someone of lower status).

[直接受身] 本は先生**{から}**学生に渡された。 (give-receive; The book was passed to the student by the teacher.; 渡す: to hand over (transitive))

[直接受身] 花束は部長**{から}**田中さんに贈られた。 (give-receive; The bouquet was given to Tanaka-san from boss.; 贈る: to gift (transitive))

[直接受身] 卒業証書は校長先生先生**{から/によって}**学生に授与されました。 (give-receive; The graduation certificates were awarded to the students by the principal.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

[直接受身] 金メダルは総理大臣**{から/によって}**優勝者に授与された。 (give-receive; The gold medal was awarded to the champion by the Prime Minister.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

If the sentence contains に to mark the *location* destination of the verb, then に can still be used (because it's a different sense in the same sentence) to mark the origin.

[直接受身] 私は先生**{に/から}**お寿司屋さんに誘われた。 (I was invited to the Sushi restaurant by teacher.; 誘う: to invite (transitive))

- For *formal* passivised verbs that refer to a give-receive transaction (same as previous point but formal), and for verbs that involve creation of a work, によって is used. As an exception, the 罰する verb (to punish (transitive)) must use によって.

  Example verbs related to creation: 描く (to draw)、作曲する (to compose (music))、発明する (to invent)、発見する (to discover)、作る、書く (to write).

  [直接受身] 卒業証書は校長先生先生**{から/によって}**学生に授与されました。 (give-receive; The graduation certificates were awarded to the students by the principal.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

  [直接受身] 金メダルは総理大臣**{から/によって}**優勝者に授与された。 (give-receive; The gold medal was awarded to the champion by the Prime Minister.; 授与する: to award (transitive))

  [直接受身] 運命はベートーベン**{によって}**作曲された。 (creation; "Fate" was composed by Beethoven.; 作曲する: to compose (music) (transitive/intransitive))

  [直接受身] 東京都庁は丹下健三氏**{によって}**設計された。 (creation; The Tokyo Metropolitan Government Building was designed by Mr. Kenzo Tange.; 設計する: to design (transitive))

  [直接受身] アメリカ大陸はコロンブス**{によって}**発見された。 (creation; The American continent was discovered by Columbus.; 発見する: to discover (transitive))

  [直接受身] 田中氏は法律**{によって}**罰せられた。 (punish; Mr. Tanaka was punished by the law.; 罰する: to punish (transitive))

Further exploration of the passive voice will be left to a future date.

GA Grammar mega summary

GA.1 Conjugation rules summary

GA.1.1 Nouns

Table 13: Noun conjugation rules.

Purpose	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
State-of-being	Present-positive	\<noun\>[だ]	\<noun\>です。
	Present-negative	\<noun\>じゃない	\<noun\>じゃないです。 \<noun\>じゃありません。
	Past-positive	\<noun\>だった	\<noun\>でした。
	Past-negative	\<noun\>じゃなかった	\<noun\>じゃなかったです。 \<noun\>じゃありませんでした。
	て-positive	\<noun\>で	-
	て-negative	\<noun\>じゃなくて	-
	Conditional-positive	\<noun\>であれば	-
	Conditional-negative	\<noun\>じゃなければ	-

In 丁寧語, 「〜した」 indicates the past-tense.

As alternative polite forms:
- 「〜ないです。」 can be replaced with 「〜ありまえん。」,
- 「〜なかったです。」 can be replaced with 「〜ありませんでした。」 .

GA.1.2 な-adjectives

Table 14: な-adjective conjugation rules.

Purpose	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
State-of-being (same as nouns)	Present-positive	\<na-adj\>[だ]	\<na-adj\>です。
	Present-negative	\<na-adj\>じゃない	\<na-adj\>じゃないです。 \<na-adj\>じゃありません。
	Past-positive	\<na-adj\>だった	\<na-adj\>でした。
	Past-negative	\<na-adj\>じゃなかった	\<na-adj\>じゃなかったです。 \<na-adj\>じゃありませんでした。
	て-positive	\<noun\>で	-
	て-negative	\<noun\>じゃなくて	-
	Conditional-positive	\<na-adj\>であれば	-
	Conditional-negative	\<na-adj\>じゃなければ	-
Noun modifier	Present-positive	\<na-adj\>**な**\<noun\>	-
	Present-negative	\<na-adj\>じゃない\<noun\>	-
	Past-positive	\<na-adj\>だった\<noun\>	-
	Past-negative	\<na-adj\>じゃなかった\<noun\>	-
Adverb	-	\<na-adj\>に	-

GA.1.3 い-adjectives

All い-adjectives end with 〜い that is <u>not</u> part of the 漢字's pronunciation.

Table 15: い-adjective conjugation rules.

Purpose	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
State-of-being	Present-positive	<i-adj root>い	<i-adj root>いです。
	Present-negative	<i-adj root>くない	<i-adj root>くないです。 <i-adj root>くありません。
	Past-positive	<i-adj root>かった	<i-adj root>かったです。
	Past-negative	<i-adj root>くなかった	<i-adj root>くなかったです。 <i-adj root>くありませんでした。
	て-positive	<i-adj root>くて	-
	て-negative	<i-adj root>くなくて	-
	Conditional-positive	<i-adj root>ければ	-
	Conditional-negative	<i-adj root>くなければ	-
Noun modifier	Present-positive	<i-adj root>い<noun>	-
	Present-negative	<i-adj root>くない<noun>	-
	Past-positive	<i-adj root>かった<noun>	-
	Past-negative	<i-adj root>くなかった<noun>	-
Adverb	-	<i-adj root>く	-

Exceptions:

い-adjectives ending with 「〜いい」 When in any form other than present-positive, the root changes from 「〜い」 to 「〜よ」.

GA.1.4 Verbs

Table 16: Verb conjugation rules.

Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
う verb	Present-positive	<∗-end root>◯	<∗-end root>◯ます。
	Negative	<∗\{う}-end root>◯ない <う-end root>わない ないある	<∗-end root>◯ません。
	Past	<す-end root>した <く-end root>いた <ぐ-end root>いだ <{む,ぬ,ぶ}-end root>んだ <{る,つ,う}-end root>った	<∗-end root>◯ました。
	Past-negative	<∗\{う}-end root>◯なかった <う-end root>わなかった なかったある	<∗-end root>◯ませんでした。
	(Stem)	-	<∗-end root>◯
	Te	<す-end root>して <く-end root>いて <ぐ-end root>いで <{む,ぬ,ぶ}-end root>んで <{る,つ,う}-end root>って	-
	Te-negative	<∗\{う}-end root>◯なくて <う-end root>わなくて なくてある	-
	Progressive (conjugate 〜いる)	<v te>いる	-

Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
	Potential (conjugate ～る)	<∗-end root>$\overset{え}{◯}$る ...	<∗-end root>$\overset{え}{◯}$ます。 ...
	Conditional	<∗-end root>$\overset{え}{◯}$ば	-
	Conditional-negative	<∗\\{う}-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$なければ <{う}-end root>わなければ なければ^ない	- - -
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	<∗-end root>$\overset{い}{◯}$たい ...	-
	Volitional	<∗-end root>$\overset{お}{◯}$う	<∗-end root>$\overset{い}{◯}$ましょう。
	Imperative	<∗-end root>$\overset{え}{◯}$	-
	Imperative-negative	<∗-end root>◯な	-
	Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す)	<∗-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$せる ... <∗-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$す ...	<∗-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$せます。 ... <∗-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$します。 ...
	Passive (conjugate ～る)	<∗-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$れる ...	<∗-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$れます。 ...
	Causative-passive (conjugate ～る)	<∗-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$せられる ... <∗\\{す}-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$される ...	<∗-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$せられます。 ... <∗\\{す}-end root>$\overset{あ}{◯}$されます。 ...
	Dictionary	<る-end root>る	<る-end root>ます。
	Negative	<る-end root>ない	<る-end root>ません。
	Past	<る-end root>た	<る-end root>ました。
	Past-negative	<る-end root>なかった	<る-end root>ませんでした。
	(Stem)	-	<る-end root>
	Te	<る-end root>て	-
	Te-negative	<る-end root>なくて	-
	Progressive (conjugate ～いる)	<v te>いる ...	<v te>います。 ...
	Potential (conjugate ～る)	<る-end root>られる ...	<る-end root>られます。 ...
	Conditional	<る-end root>れば	-
る verb	Conditional-negative	<る-end root>なければ	-
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	<る-end root>たい ...	-
	Volitional	<る-end root>よう	<る-end root>ましょう。
	Imperative	<る-end root>ろ	-
	Imperative-negative	<る-end root>るな	-
	Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す)	<る-end root>させる ... <る-end root>さす ...	{<る-end root>させます。 ... <る-end root>さします。 ...
	Passive (conjugate ～る)	<る-end root>られる ...	<る-end root>られます。 ...
	Causative-passive (conjugate ～る)	<る-end root>させられる ...	<る-end root>させられます。 ...
exception verb	Dictionary	～する ／ 来る	～します。 ／ 来ます。
	Negative	～しない ／ 来ない	～しません。 ／ 来ません。
	Past	～した ／ 来た	～しました。 ／ 来ました。
	Past-negative	～しなかった ／ 来なかった	～しませんでした。 ／ 来ませんでした。

Class	Tense	Casual schema		Polite schema	
	(Stem)	-	-	〜し	来
	Te	〜して	来て	-	-
	Te-negative	〜しなくて	来なくて	-	-
	Progressive (conjugate 〜いる)	<v te>いる …	<v te>いる …	<v te>います。 …	<v te>います。 …
	Potential (conjugate 〜る)	〜できる …	来られる …	〜できます。 …	来られます。 …
	Conditional	〜すれば	来れば	-	-
	Conditional-negative	〜しなければ	来なければ	-	-
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	〜したい …	来たい …	-	-
	Volitional	〜しよう	来よう	〜しましょう。	来ましょう。
	Imperative	〜しろ	来い	-	-
	Imperative-negative	〜するな	来るな	-	-
	Causative (conjugate 〜る /conjugate 〜す)	〜させる … 〜さす …	来させる … 来さす …	〜させます。 … 〜さします。 …	来させます。 … 来さします。 …
	Passive (conjugate 〜る)	〜される …	来られる …	〜られます。 …	来られます。 …
	Causative-passive (conjugate 〜る)	〜させられる …	来させられる …	〜させられます。 …	来させられます。 …

Basic rules/observations better expressed via prose:
- All present-negative forms end with 「〜ない」.
- The conditional form for all verbs is the same: change the last sound to $\tilde{\bigcirc}$ and attach ば.
- The conditional-negative forms all end in 「〜なければ」, which is obtained from replacing い in 「〜ない」 with ければ. This replacement rule also applies for い-adjectives, replacing the trailing 「〜い」 for 「〜ければ」.
- The volitional form for exception verbs kind of follow the rules of る verbs: drop る and replace with よう, but additionally there's also a "hint of past tense" in there, explaining the こ sound in 来よう.
- The imperative-negative form for all verbs is the same, just attach な to the dictionary form.

Exceptions:
- 行く's past-positive form is 行った, not "行いた". Only 行く uses 〜った; all other 〜く verbs still use 〜いた.
- ある's present-negative form is ない, not "あらない".
- くれる's imperative form is くれ, not "くれろ".

The following table is a condensed version, showing where the rules come from.

Table 17: Condensed verb conjugation rules. <v negative fragment>/<vnf> refers to <v negative> but dropping the trailing 「い」 character; <v past fragment>/<vpf> refers to <v past> but dropping the trailing 「た/だ」 character.

Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
	Present-positive	<*-end root>◯	<stem>ます。
う verb	Negative	<*\{う}-end root>◯ない <う-end root>わない ないある	<stem>ません。
	Past	<す-end root>した	<stem>ました。

Class	Tense	Casual schema	Polite schema
		<く-end root>いた	
		<ぐ-end root>いだ	
		<{む, ぬ, ぶ}-end root>んだ	
		<{る, つ, う}-end root>った	
	Past-negative	<v negative fragment>かった	<stem>ませんでした。
	(Stem)	-	<∗-end root>◯͡い
	Te	<v past fragment>て	-
	Te-negative	<v negative fragment>くて	-
	Progressive (conjugate 〜いる)	<v te>いる	-
	Potential (conjugate 〜る)	<∗-end root>◯͡える ...	<∗-end root>◯͡えます。 ...
	Conditional	<∗-end root>◯͡えば	-
	Conditional-negative	<v negative fragment>ければ	-
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	<stem>たい ...	-
	Volitional	<∗-end root>◯͡おう	<∗-end root>◯͡いましょう。
	Imperative	<∗-end root>◯͡え	-
	Imperative-negative	<v dict>な	-
	Causative (conjugate 〜る /conjugate 〜す)	<∗-end root>◯͡あせる ... <∗-end root>◯͡あす ...	<∗-end root>◯͡あせます。 ... <∗-end root>◯͡あします。 ...
	Passive (conjugate 〜る)	<∗-end root>◯͡あれる ...	<∗-end root>◯͡あれます。 ...
	Causative-passive (conjugate 〜る)	<∗-end root>◯͡あせられる ... <∗\{す}-end root>◯͡あされる ...	<∗-end root>◯͡あせられます。 ... <∗\{す}-end root>◯͡あされます。 ...
る verb	Dictionary	<る-end root>る	<stem>ます。
	Negative	<る-end root>ない	<stem>ません。
	Past	<る-end root>た	<stem>ました。
	Past-negative	<v negative fragment>かった	<stem>ませんでした。
	(Stem)	-	<る-end root>
	Te	<v past fragment>て	-
	Te-negative	<v negative fragment>なくて	-
	Progressive (conjugate 〜いる)	<v te>いる ...	<v te>います。 ...
	Potential (conjugate 〜る)	<る-end root>られる ...	<る-end root>られます。 ...
	Conditional	<る-end root>れば	-
	Conditional-negative	<v negative fragment>ければ	-
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	<stem>たい ...	-
	Volitional	<る-end root>よう	<る-end root>ましょう。
	Imperative	<る-end root>ろ	-
	Imperative-negative	<v dict>な	-
	Causative (conjugate 〜る /conjugate 〜す)	<る-end root>させる ... <る-end root>さす ...	{<る-end root>させます。 ... <る-end root>さします。 ...

Class	Tense	Casual schema		Polite schema	
	Passive (conjugate ～る)	<る-end root>られる …		<る-end root>られます。 …	
	Causative-passive (conjugate ～る)	<る-end root>させられる …		<る-end root>させられます。 …	
	Dictionary	～する	来る	～します。	来ます。
	Negative	～しない	来ない	～しません。	来ません。
	Past	～した	来た	～しました。	来ました。
	Past-negative	～<vnf>かった	<vnf>かった	～しませんでした。	来ませんでした。
	(Stem)	-	-	～し	来
	Te	<vpf>て	<vpf>て	-	-
	Te-negative	<vnf>くて	<vnf>くて	-	-
	Progressive (conjugate ～いる)	<v te>いる …	<v te>いる …	<v te>います。 …	<v te>います。 …
	Potential (conjugate ～る)	～できる …	来られる …	～できます。 …	来られます。 …
	Conditional	～すれば	来れば	-	-
exception verb	Conditional-negative	<vnf>ければ	<vnf>ければ	-	-
	Desiderative (conjugate i-adj)	～<stem>たい …	<stem>たい …	-	-
	Volitional	～しよう	来よう	～しましょう。	来ましょう。
	Imperative	～しろ	来い	-	-
	Imperative-negative	～するな	来るな	-	-
	Causative (conjugate ～る /conjugate ～す)	～させる … ～さす …	来させる … 来さす …	～させます。 … ～さします。 …	来させます。 … 来さします。 …
	Passive (conjugate ～る)	～される …	来られる …	～られます。 …	来られます。 …
	Causative-passive (conjugate ～る)	～させられる …	来させられる …	～させられます。 …	来させられます。 …

GA.2 Particle and schema summary

Table 18: All particles seen so far.

Particle	Particle name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
は	introductory topic marker	<main/new topic>は	§G2.2.2, §G2.5
も	inclusive topic marker	<inclusive topic>も	§G2.5
が	subject marker	<subj>が	§G2.5
を	direct object marker	<obj>を<v transitive>	§G2.9
	location-traversed marker	<location>を<motion v (intransitive OK)>	§G2.9
に	target marker	<target>に[は/も]<v>	§G2.9
	location-target marker	<location>に[は/も]<v>	§G2.9
	time-target marker	<time>[に[は/も]]<v>	§G2.9
へ	direction marker	<direction>へ[は/も]<v>	§G2.9
で	context marker	<by-way-of (where/what/how) context>で[は/も]	§G2.9
から	from-marker	<from>から	§G2.9
まで	to-marker	<to>まで	§G2.9
と	together-with marker	<nn>と<v>	§G2.10.4
と	noun exclusive listing connector	(<nn>と)*<nn>	§G2.10.4
どか/や	noun vague listing connector	(<nn>{とか/や})*<nn>	§G2.10.4

Particle	Particle name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
し	reason vague listing connector	(∗) (\<reason>し)*\<reason>	§G3.7
たり[する]	adj/verb vague listing marker	(\<past adj/v>り、)*\<past adj/v>りする	§G3.8
の	complaining listing marker	{\<nn/na-adj>だの/\<v>の}*	§G2.10.6
と	quote marker	「\<quote>」と\<v> \<quote>と\<v>	§G2.1, §G3.18.1, §G3.18.2
って	quote marker (abbreviation)	\<quote>って	§G2.1, §G3.18.1, §G3.18.2
って	generic verb (abbreviation)	\<quote>って	§G3.19.2
て	generic verb (abbreviation)	て\<v>、\<sentence>	§G3.19.2
の	label marker	\<label nn>の[\<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.4
	direction-label marker	\<direction>への[\<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
	from-label marker	\<from>からの[\<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
	only-label marker	\<only>だけの[\<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
	quote-label marker	\<quote>との[\<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
	regarding-label marker	\<regarding>についての[\<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.5
の	subjective label marker	\<na-adj label>の[\<labelled nn>]	§G2.10.7
(な)	objective label marker	\<na-adj label>な\<labelled>	§G2.10.7
	mood marker	\<nn>な気分	§G2.10.7
の	nominaliser/generic noun	(∗) \<adj-phrase/v-phrase>{の,物,こと}	§G2.10.4
	enthusiastic extraordinary	\<positive adj>の、\<negative adj>の \<adj>のなんのって	§G2.10.6
の/ん	explanatory ender	(∗) \<sentence>{の[だ/です], んだ, んです}	§G2.10.4
ので/んで	non-causal explanation/reason marker	(∗) \<reason>{ので/んで}\<result> な{ので/んで}\<result> (∗) \<reason>{の[だ/です]/んだ/んです}	§G3.6.3
から	direct cause marker	(∗) \<direct cause>から\<result> だから\<result> (∗) \<direct cause>から [です]	§G3.6.3
んだった	just-remembered marker	\<v dict>んだった	§G2.10.4
んじゃない	prohibition marker (slang)	\<v dict>ん{じゃない/じゃありません}	§G2.10.4
んじゃなかった	feeling regret marker (slang)	\<v dict>んじゃなかった	§G2.10.4
と	expected consequence marker	(∗) \<predicate>と\<statement>	§G3.15.3
ね	seeking agreement ender	\<sentence>ね	§G2.12
よ	presenting new information ender	\<sentence>よ	§G2.12
のに	despite marker	(∗) \<despite>のに、\<sentence>	§G3.6.4
けど/が	general connector	(∗) \<s1>{けど/が}\<s2>	§G3.6.5
けれど けれども	contradiction connector	(∗) \<s1>{けど/が}\<contradicting s2>	§G3.6.5
の	casual question ender	\<sentence>の	§G2.10.4
か	polite question ender	\<sentence>か	§G3.4.1
	casual binary/sarcastic question ender	\<sentence>か	§G3.4.1
	whether-or-not question marker	\<positive v>か\<negative v>か \<positive v>かどうか	§G3.4.4
でも	But		
ばかり	only? approximately? \<v te>just (time)?		
くらい	approximately/about/around		
より	than		
しか	nothing but/no more than		
ながら	while		
ながらも	despite		

Also (see takoboto): かも、じゃん

(∗) Important notes:

- For から::direct cause marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <direct cause>, だから must be used instead of から for disambiguating with the from-marker (e.g. 友達**だ**から).

  For けど/が::general connector and けど/が::contradiction connector, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <s1>, だけど/だが must be used instead (e.g. 友達**だ**{けど/が}).

  For し::reason vague listing connector, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <reason>, だし must be used instead (e.g. 友達**だ**し).

- For の::nominaliser/generic noun, if a non-conjugated na-adj is used as the <adj-phrase>, the following な particle must be used for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 静か**な**の…).

  For の::explanatory ender:

  ‣ if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <sentence>, the following な particle must be used for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 緊張**な**のです。).
  ‣ polite form (〜ますの for verbs and 〜ですの for い-adjectives) cannot be used; used 〜のです/〜んです instead.

  For ので::non-causal explanation/reason marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used at the end of <reason>, なので is used instead for disambiguating with the label marker (e.g. 静か**な**ので).

  For のに::despite marker, if a non-conjugated na-adj/noun is used as the end of <despite>, the following な particle must be used (e.g. 静か**な**のに).

Table 19: Other schemae seen so far. <v te fragment> refers to <v te> but dropping the trailing 「て」 character; <v negative fragment> refers to <v negative> but dropping the trailing 「い」 character.

Schema (short)	Schema name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
に行く/に来る	to go/come and then do	<v stem>に行く/に来る	§G3.1
へ行く/へ来る	to go/come for the purpose of doing	<v stem>へ行く/へ来る	§G3.1
てある	resultant state (implicit preparation)	<v te>ある	§G3.10
ておく/とく	completed action (explicit preparation)	<v te>おく/<v te fragment>とく	§G3.11
ていく	spatial/temporal do and go	<v te>いく	§G3.12
てくる	spatial/temporal do and come	<v te>くる	§G3.12
ことができる	given opportunity to do	<v>{こと/の}ができる	§G3.13.1
あり得る	potential to exist	<nn>{は/も/etc.}ありえる	§G3.13.2
にする	to make become	{<na-adj>にする <i-adj root>くする}	§G3.14
	to decide on	<nn>にする	§G3.14
ことにする	to decide to do	<v>ことにする	§G3.14
ようにする	to try to do	<v>ようにする	§G3.14
になる	to become	{<na-adj>になる <i-adj root>くなる <nn>になる}	§G3.14
ことになる	to have been arranged/decided to do	<v>ことになる	§G3.14
ようになる	to change state of doing	<v>ようになる	§G3.14
	to change state of feasibility	<v potential>ようになる	§G3.14
なら[ば]	contextual conditional	<context>なら[ば], <statement>	§G3.15.4; AUX
-	prohibition	{<v te>は{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v te fragment>{ちゃ/じゃ}{だめ/いけない/ならない}}	§G3.16.1

Schema (short)	Schema name/purpose	Schemae	Sections
-	requirement	{<v te-negative>は{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative fragment>くちゃ <v negative>と{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative>と <v conditional-negative>{だめ/いけない/ならない} <v negative fragment>きゃ}	§G3.16.2
-	permission	{<v te>も{いい/大丈夫/構わない} <v te>いい}	§G3.16.3
-	suggestion	<v conditional>/<v past conditional>どう	§G3.17.4
という	definition connector	<definition>という<thing>	§G3.19.1
というか	re-definition connector	<to be redefined>というか、<redefinition>	§G3.19.3
という{の/こと}	generic verb	<quote>という{の/こと}	§G3.19.2
てみる	trialling something	<v te>みる	§G3.20.1
とする	attempting something	<v volitional>と{する/<v>}	§G3.20.2
てあげる	giving a favour (first person)	<v te>あげる	§G3.21.1
てくれる	giving a favour (second person)	<v te>くれる	§G3.21.1
てもらう	receiving a favour	<v te>もらう	§G3.21.2
てくれる/てもらえう	soliciting a favour	<v te>{くれる/もらえる}	§G3.21.3
てください。/て	honorific request	{<v te>ください。 <v te>}	§G3.22.1
てちょうだい。	casual request	<v te>ちょうだい。	§G3.22.2
なさい/な	polite firm request	{<v stem>なさい <v stem>な}	§G3.22.3

GB Phrases

- 待ち時間はどのくらいですか。 (How long is the wait?)

- はぁ !?

- バカにしてる？ (Are you making fun of me?) してないしてない。

- フンッ！ (Hmph/blow)

- 朝早いです。 (Early in the morning.)

- 爽快な朝！総会の目覚め！ (Starting a new day full of energy!)

- まだ寝たいの！ (I don't want to get up already!) ういちゃん朝だよ！(Wakey, wakey, Ui-chan!) やだ！ (No!)

- まだ６時だよ？(It's only 6 AM.) もう６時だよ！ (It's already 6 AM!)

- 私たち(からしたら)寝る時間だろ？ (This is when we normally get into bed.)

- ということで！(And here we are!)

- みんな聞きましたね？ (You heard her, everyone.)

- Conversation:

  男子: もしもし？

  みゆきさん: もしもし。

  男子: お疲れ。 (Glad you could make it.)

  みゆきさん: お疲れ。

  男子: ちょっとさ、あの、１つ、あのちょと、聞きたいことあって。(So um, there is one thing I'd like to ask you.)

  みゆきさん: うん。 (Yeah?)

  男子: ちょっとあの、今度さ、二人でさ、飯でもいかね？ (Would you like to go out for a meal together sometime?; 今度: soon; 飯: meal)

  みゆきさん: ご飯？

  男子: そうそうそう。

  男子: 気になって、みゆきさんのこと。(I've been interested about you, Miyuki.)

  みゆきさん: そうなの？ (Is that so?)

  男子: そう。

  みゆきさん: うん、ごはん、いいよ。行こ。 (Yeah, dinner's good, let's go!)

  男子: マジ？ (Really?)

  みゆきさん: うん、本当にいいよいいよ。

  男子: えじゃちょっとさ、詳しい予定さまた後で、あの話そう。

  みゆきさん: わかった。

  男子: ありがと。

みゆきさん: いやこちらこそありがと。(No thank YOU.)

男子: じゃね、おつかれ。

みゆきさん: うん、おつかれ。

GB.1 I don't know Japanese

See the main reel on [IG].

- 日本話話せません。 (I cannot speak Japanese.)
- 日本話わかりません。(I don't understand Japanese.)
- 申し訳ございません。努力はしているのですが、日本語の文法が非常に難しく、何をおっしゃっているが理解することができません。誠に恐縮ではございますが、英語で話して頂くことは可能でしょうか。 よろしくお願い致します。 (I'm deeply sorry. I'm doing my best but, Japanese grammar is extremely difficult so, I can't understand what you're saying. I'm afraid but, would you possibly speak in English? Thank you in advance.)

GB.2 原神切り抜き Genshin Extracts

GB.2.1 チュートリアル動画 胡桃「雪晴梅香」Collected Miscellany - "Hu Tao: Fragrance in Thaw" JP/EN

NEED REFINE THIS IS AUTO TRANSLATED

璃月人は生活に根付く伝統 汁 その中でも特に重視されるのが命の終わりを告げる 葬儀だ 総理のしきたりは実に煩雑だがそれを言ってに引き受けるのが大常道である 大杖道は77代続く老舗だ ここ少年王女王道の面性は高まりつつある それもすべて同種風たをの人力言う 立てたら日光浴 お月様がデータなぁけっこうよく ふうたんはこの元素を操り 燃え盛る炎によってよの浮上を払う hp を消耗することでプータワーはダメージを上げることが可能 風太をが料理を完璧調理した時 確率で微妙な品質の料理を追加獲得できる 風太をの通常攻撃つ 最大6段の連続攻撃で物理ダメージを与え 銃撃はスタミナを消費し前方へと突進を埋め前 経路上の敵にダメージを与える またラッシュ時には短時間姿を期し 小柄な敵をすり抜けることが可能 [音楽] 元素スキルでは一定の hp を消費種 周囲の敵を退くバックさせ迷蝶乃舞状態に入った この時ふーたんをの攻撃は炎元素変化して このほか元素冬の影響を受けん 農事に集団大勢の上昇し hp 上限を基準も攻撃力がアップ 迷蝶乃舞状態は持続時間の終了 またはフータウンの退場により解除される 添付調印の時回方法は迷蝶乃舞状態終了時に空たをを除いた チーム勢ムーンの会心率が一定時間上がる また迷蝶乃舞状態地風たをの銃撃は 的市梅香効果を与える 千葉以降状態の敵は一定時間ごと猫のダメージを受ける 同一ターゲットの付与できる千葉以降は 同時に最大一つまでだ 持続時間は風だをだけが更新できる 大杖道には 生と死の境を渡り歩く秘術が伝わってい この日術によって 術者は死を恐れず膨大な力を得る 添付しのかまどを解放すると 風太郎の hp が低い時炎ダメージが上昇する 良ゲーン 灼熱の魂をフリー広範囲炎ダメージを与える 敵に命中すると颯太をの hp 上限をもとに hp が回復する これは最大で的5体分発の可能だ また命中時にフータウンの hp が低ければより高いダメージと回復効果が発生する プー太をの戦いは自らを危険にさらすそのため連携係となった hp 道を配りつつ元素スキルと元素爆発を発動するといい 戦闘が始まったら元素スキルで 名超の前状態にはい 通常攻撃と 11 を織り交ぜこのダメージと千葉以降効果を敵に与えよ 風太をの大上戸は添付調印の時によりチームメンバーの会心率が上がる [音楽] hp が低下したら敵の密集地帯る 元素爆発発動させるこのダメージを与えつつ自身の hp を回復するという 大杖道の葬儀は厳かでをもうもしく 人々は自然と口を注ぐ しかし同株であるふーたんはそんな雰囲気と程遠い性格の持ち主た 大杖道の年長者はこのわんぱくな

動詞に不満を抱いたが 葬儀を執り行う姿を見て感嘆の声を漏らしたと言う 成都市は返還であり 市は申請をもたらす 市は忌避すべきことなのだろう 風太をは重々承知している 理解していないのは 一部の年長者の海だ

The people of Liyue value tradition, and their traditions are embodied in all manner of rites Of these, the rites that mark life's end are of utmost importance Liyue's funeral rites are complex And only Wangsheng Funeral Parlor can conduct them to the satisfaction of all Wangsheng has stood for 77 generations and has gained still greater fame in recent years Thanks to their eccentric young director, Hu Tao When the sun's out, bathe in sunlight. But when the moon's out, bathe in moonlight Hu Tao manipulates Pyro with ease And can sacrifice her HP To increase her damage output Cleansing the world of impurities with an unrelenting flame When Hu Tao cooks a dish perfectly She has a chance to obtain a Suspicious dish of the same kind Hu Tao's Normal Attack can combo up to six strikes Dealing Physical DMG to enemies Hu Tao's Charged Attack consumes a set amount of stamina to lunge forward Dealing Physical DMG to enemies in her path Hu Tao also has a unique effect when sprinting Allowing her to briefly disappear and pass through certain small foes Hu Tao consumes part of her HP to cast her Elemental Skill Knocking nearby enemies back and entering the Paramita Papilio state This converts her attack DMG to Pyro DMG Which cannot be overridden by another elemental infusion Her resistance to interruption is also increased And she receives an ATK increase Based on her Max HP when entering this state Paramita Papilio ends after a set duration or when Hu Tao leaves the field After unlocking the Talent "Flutter By," ending Paramita Papilio Increases the CRIT Rate of all of Hu Tao's party members other than herself for a set duration Moreover, while Paramita Papilio is in effect Hu Tao's Charged Attacks apply the Blood Blossom effect to enemies it hits Enemies affected by Blood Blossom Will take Pyro DMG at set intervals This effect automatically expires after a while Only one Blood Blossom can exist on any one target at a time And only Hu Tao can refresh its duration Wangsheng has a long heritage It's said that their directors pass down a secret technique to traverse between life and death Unafraid in the face of death, they instead unleash yet greater power Once the Talent "Sanguine Rouge" is unlocked Hu Tao gains a Pyro DMG Bonus when her HP is low Pyre, pyre, pants on fire! Hu Tao commands a blazing spirit to deal Pyro DMG in a large AoE When her Elemental Burst hits enemies Hu Tao regenerates a certain percentage of her Max HP A maximum of five enemies can affect this percentage Additionally, using this skill when Hu Tao's HP is low Deals greater DMG and regenerates more HP Hu Tao's unique fighting style often imperils her As such, she must coordinate with her teammates And choose the right moment to use her skills and manage her HP Hu Tao often begins by using her Elemental Skill to enter the Paramita Papilio state Then she alternates between Normal and Charged Attacks to deal Pyro DMG Applying Blood Blossoms onto enemies She then leaves the field, using the CRIT Rate increase from "Flutter By" To increase her teammates' damage output When Hu Tao's HP is low She can choose a group of enemies upon which to unleash her Elemental Burst Dealing Pyro DMG and regenerating her HP Wangsheng Funeral Parlor conducts rites of utmost solemnity, and its staff are used to speaking little Making Hu Tao's liveliness seem an ill fit Her elders once criticized her mischief-making But having seen her immaculate conduct of the parlor's affairs They could do naught but admit their error Life and death are but two halves of an endless cycle Life leads unto death, and death unto new life — why, then, should death be taboo? Hu Tao has had the wisdom to see this, though some of her elders have yet to do so

GB.2.2 チュートリアル動画　ヴァレサ「ヒーロー見参‼」Collected Miscellany - "Varesa: Hero Incoming!" (Source JP/EN)

果樹園を手伝うヴァレサからは、おっとりとした、些か内気な印象を受ける。(Tending her orchard by day, Varesa is just a mild-mannered fruit farmer, maybe even a little shy.)

頭突き〜！ (Headbutt!)

だが、仮面をつけると、雰囲気が一変するようだ。(But when she dons her mask, she completely transforms.)

「ジャスティス‼」 ("It's justice o'clock!")

「お出かけ？それとも…試合？」 ("Are we going on a trip? Or… to a competition?")

ヴァレサは落下攻撃を軸に戦い、高速ダッシュが可能な雷元素アタッカーだ。 (Varesa is an Electro damage dealer who specialises in Plunging Attacks and has a rapid Sprint.)

仮面をつけると、「猛烈パッション」状態に入り、あらゆる攻撃が強化され、より高いダメージを与えられる。 (After donning her mask, Varesa enters the Fiery Passion state. In this state, each of her attacks gains a unique buff and deals increased DMG.)

この状態に入る方法は、主に落下攻撃となる。(Typically, Varesa uses a Plunging Attack to enter the Fiery Passion state.)

元素スキルを発動すると、前方に一定距離突進し、経路上の敵に雷ダメージを与え、一定の夜魂値を獲得する。 (With her Elemental Skill, Varesa charges forward, dealing Electro DMG to enemies in her path and recovering a set amount of Nightsoul points.)

その後、通常攻撃ボタンを押すと、重撃を放ち、跳び上がる。(By subsequently tapping Normal Attack, Varesa will quickly execute a Charged Attack then leap into the air.)

再び通常攻撃ボタンを押すと、落下攻撃で雷範囲ダメージを与え、同時に一定の夜魂値を獲得する。 (By tapping Normal Attack again, she will plunge down at the enemy, dealing AoE Electro DMG, and recovering a set amount of Nightsoul points.)

この方法で夜魂値がマックスになると、猛烈パッション状態となり、元素スキルを1回追加で使用できる。 (After reaching maximum Nightsoul Points with this method, Varesa will enter the Fiery Passion state and gain 1 extra charge of her Elemental Skill.)

「くらえ、渾身の一撃！」 ("One fell swoop!")

元素エネルギーが最大時の元素爆発では、強力な飛び蹴りで雷範囲ダメージを与える。 (When Energy is full, Varesa can use her Elemental Burst to deliver a powerful flying kick that deals AoE Electro DMG.)

元素爆発発動後、夜魂値が上限まで回復し、猛烈パッション状態となる。(This will also restore Varesa's Nightsoul points to maximum, and send her into the Fiery Passion state.)

また、この状態で落下攻撃を放ってから短時間クールタイムを無視して、より少ない元素エネルギーで特殊な元素爆発を1回発動できる、これは落下攻撃ダメージとみなされる。(After performing a Plunging Attack in the Fiery Passion state, the cooldown of Varesa's Elemental Burst is ignored for a short period, during which she can execute a single special Elemental Burst that costs less Energy, and deals Plunging Attack DMG.)

戦闘中、ヴァレサは元素スキルで敵陣に突撃し、通常攻撃ボタンで高く跳び上がった後、落下攻撃を繰り出して夜魂値を溜め、猛烈パッション状態に入る。 (In battle, Varesa strikes at the

enemy with her Elemental Skill, then leaps up into the air with a tap of her Normal Attack. Tapping Normal Attack again, she plunges down, gains full Nightsoul points, and enters the Fiery Passion State.)

この状態中、先ほどの手順を繰り返して大ダメージを与え、機を見計らい、少ない元素エネルギーの、または通常の元素爆発を発動するといいだろう。 (Now, Varesa can continue with this same attack routine to deal increased DMG, peppering in high- or low-Energy-cost Elemental Bursts at opportune moments as needed.)

全力疾走するヴァレサを止められる自信があるならいいが 勧めはしない 元素スキル長押しで夜魂の加護状態に入ると 継続的に夜魂値を消費する 移動速度と中断耐性がアップし 地形を利用して 遠くへ跳んだり 夜魂値を追加消費して 水面と液体燃素の上を移動したりできる この時 液体燃素のダメージを受けない 燃素を利用できるナタのエリアにいる時 チームにヴァレサがいる状態で料理を使用すると 燃素を一定値回復する また 特定の移動状態にあるキャラから切り替えると ヴァレサは夜魂の加護状態で登場する 同じことでも それをやる理由は人それぞれだ 例えば 威嚇のためによく使われる仮面だが ヴァレサの場合 勇気を与える道具となっている いつか仮面を被らず戦えたら と願っているようだが 仮面を被ること自体 勇気のいる行為だとは気づいていないらしい 無論 仮面には他の役割もある… 以前チュエンマーケットを訪れた際 精巧かつ創意溢れる仮面が並んでいた …残念ながら 俺には似合わなそうだったが

Maybe you think you could stop Varesa on a rampage While I don't doubt your judgment, I'd advise against it Hold Varesa's Elemental Skill to enter the Nightsoul's Blessing state and steadily consume Nightsoul points In this state She will gain increased Movement SPD, resistance to interruption And sprinting SPD In addition, she can make flying leaps off the terrain Or consume additional Nightsoul points to move on water, and even on liquid Phlogiston Without taking damage In areas with Natlan's Phlogiston mechanics If Varesa is in the party Your own characters can eat food to replenish phlogiston Furthermore, if the active character is in a specific movement state Varesa can take the field already in the Nightsoul's Blessing state People often do the same thing for very different reasons Take masks, for instance: Some wear them to intimidate other people While Varesa wears hers to gain courage She longs for the day when she no longer needs her mask to feel confident Not realizing that sometimes, it takes more courage to don one's mask than not to Of course, there are masks for all kinds of occasions... Chuwen Fair sells quite a range, actually. I've browsed them before Outstanding works of art and meticulously made Though, sadly... they don't really suit me

SA 仮名

SA.1 平仮名（ひらがな）

Some general notes:

- The ん character is rarely used by itself, but suffixed to another character to add the "n" sound.

SA.1.1 Mnemonics

Table 20: 平仮名 mnemonic table. †Particle romanisations.

平仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
あ	あ	a	a	"A" shape
い	い	i	i	eel
う	う	u	u	"u" shape
え	え	e	e	exotic swan
お	お	o	o	double "o" shape
か	か	ka	ka	咖啡
が	が	ga	ga	
き	き	ki	ki	key
きゃ	きゃ	kya	kya	
きゅ	きゅ	kyu	kyu	
きょ	きょ	kyo	kyo	
ぎ	ぎ	gi	gi	
ぎゃ	ぎゃ	gya	gya	
ぎゅ	ぎゅ	gyu	gyu	
ぎょ	ぎょ	gyo	gyo	
く	く	ku	ku	bird ku-ku
ぐ	ぐ	gu	gu	
け	け	ke	ke	kelp (loose kelp)
げ	げ	ge	ge	
こ	こ	ko	ko	co-habiting worms
ご	ご	go	go	
さ	さ	sa	sa	salsa (two hand stir) / NOT "5"
ざ	ざ	za	za	
し	し	shi	si/shi	sheep; shepherd's crook
しゃ	しゃ	sha	sha	
しゅ	しゅ	shu	shu	
しょ	しょ	sho	sho	

平仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
じ	じ	ji	zi/ji	
じゃ	じゃ	ja	jya/ja	
じゅ	じゅ	ju	jyu/ju	
じょ	じょ	jo	jyo/jo	
す	す	su	su	swing
ず	ず	zu	zu	
せ	せ	se	se	世界
ぜ	ぜ	ze	ze	
そ	そ	so	so	soda / "sword" shape
ぞ	ぞ	zo	zo	
た	た	ta	ta	"ta" shape
だ	だ	da	da	
ち	ち	chi	ti/chi	the "5"
ちゃ	ちゃ	cha	cha	
ちゅ	ちゅ	chu	chu	
ちょ	ちょ	cho	cho	
ぢ	ぢ	ji	di	
ぢゃ	ぢゃ	ja	dya	
ぢゅ	ぢゅ	ju	dyu	
ぢょ	ぢょ	jo	dyo	
つ	つ	tsu	tu/tsu	tsunami
づ	づ	zu	du	
て	て	te	te	telescope
で	で	de	de	
と	と	to	to	toe with splinter
ど	ど	do	do	
な	な	na	na	nun praying to cross
に	に	ni	ni	needle
にゃ	にゃ	nya	nya	
にゅ	にゅ	nyu	nyu	
にょ	にょ	nyo	nyo	
ぬ	ぬ	nu	nu	noodles with tail
ね	ね	ne	ne	ねこ (neko) with tail
の	の	no	no	pig nose

平仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
は	は	ha/wa†	ha	"Ha" shape
ば	ば	ba	ba	
ぱ	ぱ	pa	pa	
ひ	ひ	hi	hi	heel / he has a big nose
ひゃ	ひゃ	hya	hya	
ひゅ	ひゅ	hyu	hyu	
ひょ	ひょ	hyo	hyo	
び	び	bi	bi	
びゃ	びゃ	bya	bya	
びゅ	びゅ	byu	byu	
びょ	びょ	byo	byo	
ぴ	ぴ	pi	pi	
ぴゃ	ぴゃ	pya	pya	
ぴゅ	ぴゅ	pyu	pyu	
ぴょ	ぴょ	pyo	pyo	
ふ	ふ	fu	hu/fu	Mount Fuji
ぶ	ぶ	bu	bu	
ぷ	ぷ	pu	pu	
へ	へ	he/e†	he	headband / Mount St. Helens
べ	べ	be	be	
ぺ	ぺ	pe	pe	
ほ	ほ	ho	ho	mutated santa says ho ho ho
ぼ	ぼ	bo	bo	
ぽ	ぽ	po	po	
ま	ま	ma	ma	mutated mom with snake tail
み	み	mi	mi	me just turned 21
みゃ	みゃ	mya	mya	
みゅ	みゅ	myu	myu	
みょ	みょ	myo	myo	
む	む	mu	mu	cow says moo
め	め	me	me	eye shape without tail
も	も	mo	mo	more worms to catch more fish
や	や	ya	ya	yacht with anchor down
ゆ	ゆ	yu	yu	u-tensils

平仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
よ	よ	yo	yo	"yo" shape
ら	ら	ra	ra	rabbit
り	り	ri	ri	reeds
りゃ	りゃ	rya	rya	
りゅ	りゅ	ryu	ryu	
りょ	りょ	ryo	ryo	
る	る	ru	ru	weird route **with tail**
れ	れ	re	re	retching guy kneeled down
ろ	ろ	ro	ro	normal road **without tail**
わ	わ	wa	wa	wallaby / wasp
を	を	wo/o†	wo	woah the water is cold
ん	ん	nn	nn	"n" shape
ぁ	ぁ	?	la/xa	
ぃ	ぃ	?	li/xi	
ぅ	ぅ	?	lu/xu	
ぇ	ぇ	?	le/xe	
ぉ	ぉ	?	lo/xo	
ゃ	ゃ	?	lya/xya	
ゅ	ゅ	?	lyu/xyu	
ょ	ょ	?	lyo/xyo	
っ	っ	†1>	ltu/ltsu/xtsu/repeat >	

SA.2 片仮名（カタカナ）

Some general notes:

- Usage of the ・ symbol to denote word boundaries is completely optional.

SA.2.1 Mnemonics

Table 21: 片仮名 mnemonic table. Some entries were taken from Wikipedia (Hepburn Romanisation) but only the orange and blue ones are taken, since the beige and purple ones are regarded as unofficial (by me).

片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
ア	ア	a	a	"A" shape
イ	イ	i	i	eagle perched
イェ	イェ	ye	ye	
ウ	ウ	u	u	same shape as う

片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
ウィ	ウィ	wi	wi	
ウェ	ウェ	we	we	
ウォ	ウォ	wo	UXO	
ヴ	ヴ	vu	vu	
ヴァ	ヴァ	va	va	
ヴィ	ヴィ	vi	vi	
ヴュ	ヴュ	vyu	vyu	
ヴェ	ヴェ	ve	ve	
ヴォ	ヴォ	vo	vo	
エ	エ	e	e	engineer bar
オ	オ	o	o	opera talent (才) singing
カ	カ	ka	ka	same shape as か
ガ	ガ	ga	ga	
キ	キ	ki	ki	same shape as き
キャ	キャ	kya	kya	
キュ	キュ	kyu	kyu	
キョ	キョ	kyo	kyo	
ギ	ギ	gi	gi	
ギャ	ギャ	gya	gya	
ギュ	ギュ	gyu	gyu	
ギョ	ギョ	gyo	gyo	
ク	ク	ku	ku	cook's hat
クァ	クァ	kwa	kwa	
クィ	クィ	kwi	kwi	
クェ	クェ	kwe	kwe	
クォ	クォ	kwo	kwo	
グ	グ	gu	gu	
グァ	グァ	gwa	gwa	
ケ	ケ	ke	ke	"k" shape
ゲ	ゲ	ge	ge	
コ	コ	ko	ko	broken 口 (CN) / two corners
ゴ	ゴ	go	go	
サ	サ	sa	sa	sardines and salmon (bigger)
ザ	ザ	za	za	

片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
シ	シ	shi	si/shi	same direction as し
シャ	シャ	sha	sha	
シュ	シュ	shu	shu	
シェ	シュ	she	she	
ショ	ショ	sho	sho	
ジ	ジ	ji	zi/ji	
ジャ	ジャ	ja	jya/ja	
ジュ	ジュ	ju	jyu/ju	
ジェ	ジェ	je	jye/je	
ジョ	ジョ	jo	jyo/jo	
ス	ス	su	su	superman
ズ	ズ	zu	zu	
セ	セ	se	se	same shape as せ
ゼ	ゼ	ze	ze	
ソ	ソ	so	so	sewing needles
ゾ	ゾ	zo	zo	
タ	タ	ta	ta	tidal wave
ダ	ダ	da	da	
チ	チ	chi	ti/chi	cheer / 千
チャ	チャ	cha	cha	
チュ	チュ	chu	chu	
チェ	チェ	che	che	
チョ	チョ	cho	cho	
ヂ	ヂ	ji	di	
ヂャ	ヂャ	ja	dya	
ヂュ	ヂュ	ju	dyu	
ヂョ	ヂョ	jo	dyo	
ツ	ツ	tsu	tu/tsu	same direction as つ
ツァ	ツァ	tsa	tsa	Italia "z"
ツィ	ツィ	tsi	tsi	Italia "z"
ツェ	ツェ	tse	tse	Italia "z"
ツォ	ツォ	tso	tso	Italia "z"
ヅ	ヅ	zu	du	
テ	テ	te	te	telephone pole

片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
ティ	ティ	ti	texi	"par*ty*"
テュ	ティ	tyu	texyu	
デ	デ	de	de	
ディ	ディ	di	dexi	"can*dy*"
デュ	デュ	dyu	dexyu	
ト	ト	to	to	<u>to</u>tem pole
トゥ	トゥ	tu	toxu	"*two*"
ド	ド	do	do	
ドゥ	ドゥ	du	dowu	"*dew*"
ナ	ナ	na	na	<u>na</u>rwhal
ニ	ニ	ni	ni	same shape as に
ニャ	ニャ	nya	nya	
ニュ	ニュ	nyu	nyu	
ニョ	ニョ	nyo	nyo	
ヌ	ヌ	nu	nu	<u>nu</u>odles with chopsticks
ネ	ネ	ne	ne	<u>ne</u>ckerchief
ノ	ノ	no	no	long <u>no</u>se
ハ	ハ	ha	ha	八 / 八 (CN)
バ	バ	ba	ba	
パ	パ	pa	pa	
ヒ	ヒ	hi	hi	smile <u>hi</u>hi
ヒャ	ヒャ	hya	hya	
ヒュ	ヒュ	hyu	hyu	
ヒョ	ヒョ	hyo	hyo	
ビ	ビ	bi	bi	
ビャ	ビャ	bya	bya	
ビュ	ビュ	byu	byu	
ビョ	ビョ	byo	byo	
ピ	ピ	pi	pi	
ピャ	ピャ	pya	pya	
ピュ	ピュ	pyu	pyu	
ピョ	ピョ	pyo	pyo	
フ	フ	fu	hu/fu	<u>fl</u>ag
ファ	ファ	fa	fa	

片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
フィ	フィ	fi	fi	
フュ	フュ	fyu	fyu	
フェ	フェ	fe	fe	
フォ	フォ	fo	fo	
ブ	ブ	bu	bu	
プ	プ	pu	pu	
ヘ	ヘ	he	he	same shape as へ
ベ	ベ	be	be	
ペ	ペ	pe	pe	
ホ	ホ	ho	ho	holy cross
ボ	ボ	bo	bo	
ポ	ポ	po	po	
マ	マ	ma	ma	math angles
ミ	ミ	mi	mi	missiles
ミャ	ミャ	mya	mya	
ミュ	ミュ	myu	myu	
ミョ	ミョ	myo	myo	
ム	ム	mu	mu	cow face, says moo
メ	メ	me	me	Arlecchino's eyes (め)
モ	モ	mo	mo	same shape as も
ヤ	ヤ	ya	ya	same shape as や
ユ	ユ	yu	yu	u-turn
ヨ	ヨ	yo	yo	yoga pose
ラ	ラ	ra	ra	raptor
リ	リ	ri	ri	reeds
リャ	リャ	rya	rya	
リュ	リュ	ryu	ryu	
リョ	リョ	ryo	ryo	
ル	ル	ru	ru	tree roots
レ	レ	re	re	red hair / right side of ル
ロ	ロ	ro	ro	cyclic road
ワ	ワ	wa	wa	watermelon slice
ヲ	ヲ	wo	wo	oatmeal bowl
ン	ン	nn	nn	N/A

片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command	Mnemonic
ァ	ア	?	la/xa	
ィ	イ	?	li/xi	
ゥ	ウ	?	lu/xu	
ェ	エ	?	le/xe	
ォ	オ	?	lo/xo	
ャ	ヤ	?	lya/xya	
ュ	ユ	?	lyu/xyu	
ョ	ヨ	?	lyo/xyo	
ー	ー	<[+1]	— key	
ッ	ツ	[+1]>	ltu/ltsu/xtsu/repeat >	

SA.3 仮名 Summary

Table 22: 仮名 summary table. [†]Particle romanisation applies only for 平仮名.

平仮名		片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
あ	あ	ア	ア	a	a
い	い	イ	イ	i	i
		イェ	イェ	ye	ye
う	う	ウ	ウ	u	u
		ウィ	ウィ	wi	wi
		ウェ	ウェ	we	we
		ウォ	ウォ	wo	uxo
		ヴ	ヴ	vu	vu
		ヴァ	ヴァ	va	va
		ヴィ	ヴィ	vi	vi
		ヴュ	ヴュ	vyu	vyu
		ヴェ	ヴェ	ve	ve
		ヴォ	ヴォ	vo	vo
え	え	エ	エ	e	e
お	お	オ	オ	o	o
か	か	カ	カ	ka	ka
が	が	ガ	ガ	ga	ga
き	き	キ	キ	ki	ki
きゃ	きゃ	キャ	キャ	kya	kya

平仮名		片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
きゅ	きゅ	キュ	キュ	kyu	kyu
きょ	きょ	キョ	キョ	kyo	kyo
ぎ	ぎ	ギ	ギ	gi	gi
ぎゃ	ぎゃ	ギャ	ギャ	gya	gya
ぎゅ	ぎゅ	ギュ	ギュ	gyu	gyu
ぎょ	ぎょ	ギョ	ギョ	gyo	gyo
く	く	ク	ク	ku	ku
		クァ	クァ	kwa	kwa
		クィ	クィ	kwi	kwi
		クェ	クェ	kwe	kwe
		クォ	クォ	kwo	kwo
ぐ	ぐ	グ	グ	gu	gu
		グァ	グァ	gwa	gwa
け	け	ケ	ケ	ke	ke
げ	げ	ゲ	ゲ	ge	ge
こ	こ	コ	コ	ko	ko
ご	ご	ゴ	ゴ	go	go
さ	さ	サ	サ	sa	sa
ざ	ざ	ザ	ザ	za	za
し	し	シ	シ	shi	si/shi
しゃ	しゃ	シャ	シャ	sha	sha
しゅ	しゅ	シュ	シュ	shu	shu
		シェ	シュ	she	she
しょ	しょ	ショ	ショ	sho	sho
じ	じ	ジ	ジ	ji	zi/ji
じゃ	じゃ	ジャ	ジャ	ja	jya/ja
じゅ	じゅ	ジュ	ジュ	ju	jyu/ju
		ジェ	ジェ	je	jye/je
じょ	じょ	ジョ	ジョ	jo	jyo/jo
す	す	ス	ス	su	su
ず	ず	ズ	ズ	zu	zu
せ	せ	セ	セ	se	se
ぜ	ぜ	ゼ	ゼ	ze	ze
そ	そ	ソ	ソ	so	so

平仮名		片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
ぞ	ぞ	ゾ	ゾ	zo	zo
た	た	タ	タ	ta	ta
だ	だ	ダ	ダ	da	da
ち	ち	チ	チ	chi	ti/chi
ちゃ	ちゃ	チャ	チャ	cha	cha
ちゅ	ちゅ	チュ	チュ	chu	chu
		チェ	チェ	che	che
ちょ	ちょ	チョ	チョ	cho	cho
ぢ	ぢ	ヂ	ヂ	ji	di
ぢゃ	ぢゃ	ヂャ	ヂャ	ja	dya
ぢゅ	ぢゅ	ヂュ	ヂュ	ju	dyu
ぢょ	ぢょ	ヂョ	ヂョ	jo	dyo
つ	つ	ッ	ツ	tsu	tu/tsu
		ツァ	ツァ	tsa	tsa
		ツィ	ツィ	tsi	tsi
		ツェ	ツェ	tse	tse
		ツォ	ツォ	tso	tso
づ	づ	ヅ	ヅ	zu	du
て	て	テ	テ	te	te
		ティ	ティ	ti	texi
		テュ	ティ	tyu	texyu
で	で	デ	デ	de	de
		ディ	ディ	di	dexi
		デュ	デュ	dyu	dexyu
と	と	ト	ト	to	to
		トゥ	トゥ	tu	toxu
ど	ど	ド	ド	do	do
		ドゥ	ドゥ	du	dowu
な	な	ナ	ナ	na	na
に	に	ニ	ニ	ni	ni
にゃ	にゃ	ニャ	ニャ	nya	nya
にゅ	にゅ	ニュ	ニュ	nyu	nyu
にょ	にょ	ニョ	ニョ	nyo	nyo
ぬ	ぬ	ヌ	ヌ	nu	nu

平仮名		片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
ね	ね	ネ	ネ	ne	ne
の	の	ノ	ノ	no	no
は	は	ハ	ハ	ha	ha
ば	ば	バ	バ	ba	ba
ぱ	ぱ	パ	パ	pa	pa
ひ	ひ	ヒ	ヒ	hi	hi
ひゃ	ひゃ	ヒャ	ヒャ	hya	hya
ひゅ	ひゅ	ヒュ	ヒュ	hyu	hyu
ひょ	ひょ	ヒョ	ヒョ	hyo	hyo
び	び	ビ	ビ	bi	bi
びゃ	びゃ	ビャ	ビャ	bya	bya
びゅ	びゅ	ビュ	ビュ	byu	byu
びょ	びょ	ビョ	ビョ	byo	byo
ぴ	ぴ	ピ	ピ	pi	pi
ぴゃ	ぴゃ	ピャ	ピャ	pya	pya
ぴゅ	ぴゅ	ピュ	ピュ	pyu	pyu
ぴょ	ぴょ	ピョ	ピョ	pyo	pyo
ふ	ふ	フ	フ	fu	hu/fu
		ファ	ファ	fa	fa
		フィ	フィ	fi	fi
		フュ	フュ	fyu	fyu
		フェ	フェ	fe	fe
		フォ	フォ	fo	fo
ぶ	ぶ	ブ	ブ	bu	bu
ぷ	ぷ	プ	プ	pu	pu
へ	へ	ヘ	ヘ	he	he
べ	べ	ベ	ベ	be	be
ぺ	ぺ	ペ	ペ	pe	pe
ほ	ほ	ホ	ホ	ho	ho
ぼ	ぼ	ボ	ボ	bo	bo
ぽ	ぽ	ポ	ポ	po	po
ま	ま	マ	マ	ma	ma
み	み	ミ	ミ	mi	mi
みゃ	みゃ	ミャ	ミャ	mya	mya

平仮名		片仮名		Hepburn romanisation	Keyboard command
みゅ	みゅ	ミュ	ミュ	myu	myu
みょ	みょ	ミョ	ミョ	myo	myo
む	む	ム	ム	mu	mu
め	め	メ	メ	me	me
も	も	モ	モ	mo	mo
や	や	ヤ	ヤ	ya	ya
ゆ	ゆ	ユ	ユ	yu	yu
よ	よ	ヨ	ヨ	yo	yo
ら	ら	ラ	ラ	ra	ra
り	り	リ	リ	ri	ri
りゃ	りゃ	リャ	リャ	rya	rya
りゅ	りゅ	リュ	リュ	ryu	ryu
りょ	りょ	リョ	リョ	ryo	ryo
る	る	ル	ル	ru	ru
れ	れ	レ	レ	re	re
ろ	ろ	ロ	ロ	ro	ro
わ	わ	ワ	ワ	wa	wa
を	を	ヲ	ヲ	wo	wo
ん	ん	ン	ン	nn	nn
ぁ	あ	ァ	ア	?	la/xa
ぃ	い	ィ	イ	?	li/xi
ぅ	う	ゥ	ウ	?	lu/xu
ぇ	え	ェ	エ	?	le/xe
ぉ	お	ォ	オ	?	lo/xo
ゃ	や	ャ	ヤ	?	lya/xya
ゅ	ゆ	ュ	ユ	?	lyu/xyu
ょ	よ	ョ	ョ	?	lyo/xyo
		ー	ー	<[+1]	— key
っ	つ	ッ	ツ	[+1]>	ltu/ltsu/xtsu/repeat >

SB Basic nouns

SB.1 Numbers

Table 23: Basic nouns: numbers.

Name	Meaning	Notes
零/0/〇	zero	[NHK] also: ゼロ/ (with 漢字 numerals)
一/1/壱	one	
二/2/弐	two	
三/3/参	three	
• 四/4/四	four	[HN] 肆 is obsolete; 四 only when counting up/ compound 漢字/banks
五/5/五	five	伍 is obsolete
六/6/六	six	陸 is obsolete
• 七/7/七	seven	[HN] 漆 is obsolete
八/8/八	eight	捌 is obsolete
九 / 9 /九	nine	玖 is obsolete
十 /一〇/ 10 /拾	ten	
十一/ 11	eleven	
十二/ 12	twelve	
十三/ 13	thirteen	
十四/ 14	fourteen	
十五/ 15	fifteen	
十六/ 16	sixteen	
十七/ 17	seventeen	
十八/ 18	eighteen	
十九 / 19	nineteen	
二十 /二〇/ 20	twenty	
三十 /三〇/ 30	thirty	
四十 /四〇/ 40	fourty	
五十 /五〇/ 50	fifty	
六十 /六〇/ 60	sixty	
七十 /七〇/ 70	seventy	
八十 /八〇/ 80	eighty	
九十 /九〇/ 90	ninety	
百 /一〇〇/ 100	hundred	
二百 / 2 百 /二〇〇/ 200	two hundred	
• 三百 / 3 百 /三〇〇/ 300	three hundred	
四百 / 4 百 /四〇〇/ 400	four hundred	
五百 / 5 百 /五〇〇/ 500	five hundred	
• 六百 / 6 百 /六〇〇/ 600	six hundred	
七百 / 7 百 /七〇〇/ 700	seven hundred	

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 八百/8百/八〇〇/800	eight hundred	
九百/9百/九〇〇/900	nine hundred	
• 千/一千/1千/一〇〇〇/1000	thousand	
二千/2千/二〇〇〇/2000	two thousand	
• 三千/3千/三〇〇〇/3000	three thousand	
四千/4千/四〇〇〇/4000	four thousand	
五千/5千/五〇〇〇/5000	five thousand	
六千/6千/六〇〇〇/6000	six thousand	
七千/7千/七〇〇〇/7000	seven thousand	
• 八千/8千/八〇〇〇/8000	eight thousand	
九千/9千/九〇〇〇/9000	nine thousand	
一万/1万/一〇〇〇〇/1万/壱萬	ten thousand	
十万/10万/一〇〇〇〇〇/100000/拾万/拾萬	hundred thousand	
百万/100万/1000000/壱百万/壱百萬	million	
• 千万/一千万/1千万/1000万/一〇〇〇万/10000000	ten million	
一億/1億	hundred million	
一兆/1億	trillion	

SB.2 Counting (generic): つ

Table 24: Basic nouns: counting (generic).

Name	Meaning	Notes
いくつ	how many?	(幾つ)
一つ/1つ	one item	
二つ/2つ	two items	
三つ/3つ	three items	
四つ/4つ	four items	
五つ/5つ	five items	
六つ/6つ	six items	
七つ/7つ	seven items	
八つ/8つ	eight items	
九つ/9つ	nine items	
十	ten items	

Name	Meaning	Notes
全部	all/entire/whole/altogether	also an adverb
以上	and above	SUFFIX, also an expression
以下	and below/subpar	SUFFIX
次	next	

SB.3 Counting people: 人

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 25: Basic nouns: counting people.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何人	how many people?	
• 1人	one person; being alone/single	
• 2人	two people	
3人	three people	
• 4人	four people	
5人	five people	
6人	six people	
• 7人/7人	seven people; former preferred for clarity Actually, we don't talk about しち…right? See grammar book when you get there	[HN1], [HN2]
8人	eight people	
9人	nine people	
10人	ten people	
100人	hundred people	
1000人	thousand people	
1万人	ten thousand people	
一緒	together	

SB.4 Counting bus/train stations: 駅

Table 26: Basic nouns: counting bus/train stations.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何駅	how many stations?	
• 1駅	one station	
• 2駅	two stations	
3駅	three stations	
4駅	four stations	
5駅	five stations	
6駅	six stations	
7駅	seven stations	
8駅	eight stations	
9駅	nine stations	
10駅	ten stations	
100駅	hundred stations	
1000駅	thousand stations	
1万駅	ten thousand stations	

SB.5 Counting age: 歳

才 may be used as a simpler substitute for 歳 only in handwriting, but note that 才 is technically incorrect as it does not mean age ([HN]).

Table 27: Basic nouns: counting age.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何歳	how old?	
•	1歳未満	less than one year old	e.g. 「〜の乳児」; [NHK]
•	1歳	one year old	
	2歳	two year old	
	3歳	three years old	
	4歳	four years old	
	5歳	five years old	
	6歳	six years old	
	7歳	seven years old	
•	8歳	eight years old	
	9歳	nine years old	
•	10歳	ten years old	じっさい also possible?
	二十歳/20歳	twenty years old	the only exception, to do with coming-of-age
	100歳	hundred years old	
	1000歳	thousand years old	
	1万歳	ten thousand years old	

SB.6 Counting thin/flat things: 枚

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 28: Basic nouns: counting thin/flat things.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何枚	how many sheets/thin or flat things?	
1枚	one sheet/thin or flat thing	
2枚	two sheets/thin or flat things	
3枚	three sheets/thin or flat things	
4枚	four sheets/thin or flat things	
5枚	five sheets/thin or flat things	
6枚	six sheets/thin or flat things	
7枚	seven sheets/thin or flat things	
8枚	eight sheets/thin or flat things	
9枚	nine sheets/thin or flat things	
10枚	ten sheets/thin or flat things	
100枚	hundred sheets/thin or flat things	
1000枚	thousand sheets/thin or flat things	
1万枚	ten thousand sheets/thin or flat things	

SB.7 Counting thin long things (bottles): 本

Tofugu: TO READ

bottles/trains/buses/books/films/phone calls

Table 29: Basic nouns: counting thin long things (bottles).

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 何本	how many thin long things?	
• 1本	one thin long thing	
2本	two thin long things	
• 3本	three thin long things	
4本	four thin long things	
5本	five thin long things	
• 6本	six thin long things	
7本	seven thin long things	
• 8本	eight thin long things	
9本	nine thin long things	
• 10本	ten thin long things	じっぽん also possible?
• 100本	one hundred thin long things	
• 1000本	one thousand thin long things	
• 1万本	ten thousand thin long things	

SB.8 Counting drinks (cups/glasses): 杯

Table 30: Basic nouns: counting drinks (cups/glasses).

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 何杯	how many drinks/cups/glasses?	
• 1杯	one drink/cup/glass	
2杯	two drinks/cups/glasses	
• 3杯	three drinks/cups/glasses	
4杯	four drinks/cups/glasses	
5杯	five drinks/cups/glasses	
• 6杯	six drinks/cups/glasses	
7杯	seven drinks/cups/glasses	
• 8杯	eight drinks/cups/glasses	
9杯	nine drinks/cups/glasses	
• 10杯	ten drinks/cups/glasses	じっぱい also possible?
• 100杯	hundred drinks/cups/glasses	
• 1000杯	thousand drinks/cups/glasses	
• 1万杯	ten thousand drinks/cups/glasses	

SB.9 Counting machines/vehicles: 台

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 31: Basic nouns: counting machines/vehicles.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何台	how many machines?	
1台	one machine	
2台	two machines	
3台	three machines	
4台	four machines	
5台	five machines	
6台	six machines	

Name	Meaning	Notes
7台 (ななだい)	seven machines	
8台 (はちだい)	eight machines	
9台 (きゅうだい)	nine machines	
10台 (じゅうだい)	ten machines	
100台 (ひゃくだい)	hundred machines	
1000台 (せんだい)	thousand machines	
1万台 (いちまんだい)	ten thousand machines	

SB.10 Counting books: 冊 (さつ)

<mark>Tofugu: TO READ</mark>

Table 32: Basic nouns: counting books.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何冊 (なんさつ)	how many books?	
•	1冊 (いっさつ)	one book	
	2冊 (にさつ)	two books	
	3冊 (さんさつ)	three books	
	4冊 (よんさつ)	four books	
	5冊 (ごさつ)	five books	
	6冊 (ろくさつ)	six books	
	7冊 (ななさつ)	seven books	
•	8冊 (はっさつ)	eight books	
	9冊 (きゅうさつ)	nine books	
•	10冊 (じゅっさつ)	ten books	じっさつ also possible?
	100冊 (ひゃくさつ)	hundred books	
	1000冊 (せんさつ)	thousand books	
	1万冊 (いちまんさつ)	ten thousand books	

SB.11 Counting clothes: 着 (ちゃく)

Table 33: Basic nouns: counting clothes.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何着 (なんちゃく)	how many dresses?	
•	1着 (いっちゃく)	one dress	
	2着 (にちゃく)	two dresses	
	3着 (さんちゃく)	three dresses	
	4着 (よんちゃく)	four dresses	
	5着 (ごちゃく)	five dresses	
	6着 (ろくちゃく)	six dresses	
	7着 (ななちゃく)	seven dresses	
•	8着 (はっちゃく)	eight dresses	
	9着 (きゅうちゃく)	nine dresses	
•	10着 (じゅっちゃく)	ten dresses	
	100着 (ひゃくちゃく)	hundred dresses	
	1000着 (せんちゃく)	thousand dresses	
	1万着 (いちまんちゃく)	ten thousand dresses	

SB.12 Counting small things: 個
こ

Table 34: Basic nouns: counting small things.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何個 なんこ	how many small things?	
•	1個 いっこ	one small thing	
	2個 にこ	two small things	
	3個 さんこ	three small things	
	4個 よんこ	four small things	
	5個 ごこ	five small things	
•	6個 ろっこ	six small things	
	7個 ななこ	seven small things	
•	8個/8個 はちこ/はっこ	eight small things	8個 is casual; [HN] はっこ
	9個 きゅうこ	nine small things	
•	10個 じゅっこ	ten small things	
•	100個 ひゃっこ	hundred small things	
	1000個 せんこ	thousand small things	
	1万個 いちまんこ	ten thousand small things	

個々 こ こ individual	e.g. 「そのクラスの個々のメンバー…」, like CN's 个个	

SB.13 Counting shoes and socks: 足
そく

Table 35: Basic nouns: Nouns: counting shoes and socks.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
•	何足 なんぞく	how many pairs of shoes/socks?	
•	1足 いっそく	one pair of shoes/socks	
	2足 にそく	two pairs of shoes/socks	
	3足 さんぞく	three pairs of shoes/socks	[HN]
	4足 よんそく	four pairs of shoes/socks	
	5足 ごそく	five pairs of shoes/socks	
	6足 ろくそく	six pairs of shoes/socks	
	7足 ななそく	seven pairs of shoes/socks	
•	8足 はっそく	eight pairs of shoes/socks	
	9足 きゅうそく	nine pairs of shoes/socks	
•	10足 じゅっそく	ten pairs of shoes/socks	
	100足 ひゃくそく	hundred pairs of shoes/socks	also an organism
	1000足 せんそく	thousand pairs of shoes/socks	
	1万足 いちまんそく	ten thousand pairs of shoes/socks	

SB.14 Counting houses: 軒
けん

Table 36: Basic nouns: .

	Name	Meaning	Notes
•	何軒 なんけん	how many houses?	exception[2] [myg]
•	1軒 いっけん	one house	
	2軒 にけん	two houses	

	Name	Meaning	Notes
•	<ruby>3軒<rt>さんげん</rt></ruby>	three houses	exception² PREFERENCE? [myg]
	<ruby>4軒<rt>よんけん</rt></ruby>	four houses	
	<ruby>5軒<rt>ごけん</rt></ruby>	five houses	
•	<ruby>6軒<rt>ろっけん</rt></ruby>	six houses	
	<ruby>7軒<rt>ななけん</rt></ruby>	seven houses	
◦	<ruby>8軒<rt>はちけん</rt></ruby>/<ruby>8軒<rt>はっけん</rt></ruby>	eight houses	<ruby>8軒<rt>はっけん</rt></ruby> may be casual; [HN]
	<ruby>9軒<rt>きゅうけん</rt></ruby>	nine houses	
•	<ruby>10軒<rt>じゅっけん</rt></ruby>	ten houses	
•	<ruby>100軒<rt>ひゃっけん</rt></ruby>	hundred houses	
•	<ruby>1000軒<rt>せんげん</rt></ruby>	thousand houses	exception²?
	<ruby>1万軒<rt>いちまんけん</rt></ruby>	ten thousand houses	?

SB.15 Counting floors: <ruby>階<rt>かい</rt></ruby>

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 37: Basic nouns: counting floors.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
•	<ruby>何階<rt>なんかい</rt></ruby>/<ruby>何階<rt>なんがい</rt></ruby>	which floor?	<ruby>階<rt>かい</rt></ruby> is special and can choose to rendaku, prefer first for uniformity; [myg], [TFG]
•	<ruby>1階<rt>いっかい</rt></ruby>	first floor (ground floor)	
	<ruby>2階<rt>にかい</rt></ruby>	second floor	
•	<ruby>3階<rt>さんかい</rt></ruby>/<ruby>3階<rt>さんがい</rt></ruby>	third floor	<ruby>階<rt>かい</rt></ruby> is special and can choose to rendaku, prefer first for uniformity; [myg], [TFG]
	<ruby>4階<rt>よんかい</rt></ruby>	fourth floor	
	<ruby>5階<rt>ごかい</rt></ruby>	fifth floor	
•	<ruby>6階<rt>ろっかい</rt></ruby>	sixth floor	
	<ruby>7階<rt>ななかい</rt></ruby>	seventh floor	
◦	<ruby>8階<rt>はちかい</rt></ruby>/<ruby>8階<rt>はっかい</rt></ruby>	eighth floor	<ruby>8階<rt>はっかい</rt></ruby> is informal; [HN]
	<ruby>9階<rt>きゅうかい</rt></ruby>	nine floor	
•	<ruby>10階<rt>じゅっかい</rt></ruby>	tenth floor	[HN]
•	<ruby>100階<rt>ひゃっかい</rt></ruby>	hundredth floor	
	<ruby>1000階<rt>せんかい</rt></ruby>	thousandth floor	
	<ruby>1万階<rt>いちまんかい</rt></ruby>	ten thousandth floor	

SB.16 Counting locations: <ruby>箇所<rt>か しょ</rt></ruby>

<ruby>箇所<rt>か しょ</rt></ruby> is sometimes written as ヶ所.

Table 38: Basic nouns: counting locations.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	<ruby>何箇所<rt>なん か しょ</rt></ruby>	how many locations?	
•	<ruby>1箇所<rt>いっ か しょ</rt></ruby>	one location	
	<ruby>2箇所<rt>に か しょ</rt></ruby>	two locations	
	<ruby>3箇所<rt>さん か しょ</rt></ruby>	three locations	
	<ruby>4箇所<rt>よん か しょ</rt></ruby>	four locations	
	<ruby>5箇所<rt>ご か しょ</rt></ruby>	five locations	

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 6箇所	six locations	
7箇所	seven locations	
八箇所	eight locations	
9箇所	nine locations	
• 10箇所	ten locations	
• 100箇所	hundred locations	
1000箇所	thousand locations	
1万箇所	ten thousand locations	

SB.17 Counting small animals: 匹

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 39: Basic nouns: counting small animals.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何匹	how many small animals?	
• 1匹	one small animal	
2匹	two small animals	
• 3匹	three small animals	
4匹	four small animals	
5匹	five small animals	
• 6匹	six small animals	
7匹	seven small animals	
• 8匹	eight small animals	
9匹	nine small animals	
• 10匹	ten small animals	
• 100匹	hundred small animals	
• 1000匹	thousand small animals	
• 1万匹	ten thousand small animals	

SB.18 Counting big animals: 頭

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 40: Basic nouns: counting big animals.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何頭	how many big animals?	
• 1頭	one big animal	
2頭	two big animals	
3頭	three big animals	
4頭	four big animals	
5頭	five big animals	
6頭	six big animals	
7頭	seven big animals	
• 8頭	eight big animals	
9頭	nine big animals	
• 10頭	ten big animals	
100頭	hundred big animals	

Name	Meaning	Notes
１０００頭 <ruby>せんとう</ruby>	thousand big animals	
１万頭 <ruby>いちまんとう</ruby>	ten thousand big animals	

SB.19 Counting birds and bats: 羽

Read the main article on Tofugu.

% Be careful: many winged animals don't use the 羽 counter: flying insects, winged monsters, and flying dinosaurs all use 匹 (Table 39) or 頭 (Table 40).

All birds are counted with 羽 except *very* big birds like ostriches and emus, those use 頭 (Table 40).

Table 41: Basic nouns: counting birds and bats.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何羽	how many birds/bats?	
	１羽	one bird/bats	
	２羽	two birds/bats	
•	３羽	three birds/bats	
	４羽	four birds/bats	
	５羽	five birds/bats	
	６羽	six birds/bats	
	７羽	seven birds/bats	
	８羽	eight birds/bats	
	９羽	nine birds/bats	
•	１０羽	ten birds/bats	
•	１００羽	hundred birds/bats	
•	１０００羽	thousand birds/bats	
•	１万羽	ten thousand birds/bats	

SB.20 Counting years: 年

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 42: Basic nouns: counting years.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何年	how many years?/which year?	
	１年	one year/first year	
	２年	two years/second year	
	３年	three years/third year	
•	４年	four years/fourth year	
	５年	five years/fifth year	
	６年	six years/sixth year	
	７年	seven years/seventh year	
	８年	eight years/eighth year	
	９年	nine years/ninth year	
	１０年	ten years/tenth year	
	１００年	hundred years/hundredth year	
	１０００年	thousand years/thousandth year	
	１万年	ten thousand years/ten thousandth year	

SB.21 Calendar months and days of a week: 月 and 曜日

The days of the week are named after the East Asian Seven Luminaries: the sun, the moon, and the five planets visible to the naked eye (Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn).

Table 43: Basic nouns: Calendar months and days of a week.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何月	which month?	
一月/1月	January	
二月/2月	February	
三月/3月	March	
四月/4月	April	
五月/5月	May	
六月/6月	June	
七月/7月	July	七月/7月 is sometimes used for disambiguation; [HN]
八月/8月	August	
九月/9月	September	
十月/10月	October	
十一月/11月	November	
十二月/12月	December	
何曜日	which day of the week?	
日/日曜/日曜日	Sunday	Sun
月/月曜/月曜日	Monday	Moon
火/火曜/火曜日	Tuesday	fire/Mars (火星)
水/水曜/水曜日	Wednesday	water/Mercury (水星)
木/木曜/木曜日	Thursday	wood/Jupiter (木星)
金/金曜/金曜日	Friday	metal/Venus (金星)
土/土曜/土曜日	Saturday	earth/Saturn (土星)

SB.22 Counting months: ヶ月/月

Tofugu: TO READ

月 is the 和語 reading, so counting uses the 和語 counting system.

Table 44: Basic nouns: counting months.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何ヶ月/何月	how many months?	
1ヶ月/1月	one month	1月 is semi-archaic; [HN]
2ヶ月/2月	two months	2月 is semi-archaic; [HN]
3ヶ月/3月	three months	
4ヶ月/4月	four months	
5ヶ月/5月	five months	
6ヶ月/6月	six months	
7ヶ月/7月	seven months	
8ヶ月/8ヶ月/八月/8月	eight months	8ヶ月 may be informal; [HN]
9ヶ月/9月	nine months	
10ヶ月/10月	ten months	

Name	Meaning	Notes
• １００ヶ月	hundred months	
１０００ヶ月	thousand months	
１万ヶ月	ten thousand months	

SB.23 Days of the month: 日/日/日

Read the main article on Tofugu. Also see Instagram reel.

For calendar days, the 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 14th, 20th, 24th}. All other numbers use standard 漢語 counting system (日). Furthermore, {17th, 27th} use 七, and {19th, 29th} use 九.

For ordinal days (§SB.24), there are two rules. The ～{日/日}目 schema follows the rules of day intervals (§SB.25), so 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 20th} only. Furthermore, {1st–31st, 49th} use the formal readings: {17th, 27th} use 七 (七 OK for disambiguation) and {19th, 29th, 49th} use 九. On the other hand, the 第～日 schema follows these simplified rules: the standard 漢語 counting system is used for all numbers, and {9th, 19th, 29th, 49th} use 九.

For day intervals (§SB.25), the 和語 counting system (日) is used for {2nd–10th, 20th} only. All other numbers use the standard 漢語 counting system (日). Furthermore, days intervals in {1–31, 49} days use the formal readings: {17, 27} days use 七 (七 OK for disambiguation) and {19, 29, 49} days use 九.

For o'clocks and hour intervals (§SB.26), if the ones place is 4, 7 or 9, then 四、七、九 are used, ad infinitum.

Table 45: Basic nouns: calendar days.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何日	which day of month/which day?/how many days?	
• １日/１日	first day of month	１日 is sometimes used in business settings; [TFG]
• ２日	second day of month	
３日	third day of month	
４日	fourth day of month	
５日	fifth day of month	
• ６日	sixth day of month	
• ７日	seventh day of month	
• ８日	eighth day of month	
９日	ninth day of month	
１０日	tenth day of month	
１１日	eleventh day of month	
１２日	twelfth day of month	
１３日	thirteenth day of month	
• １４日	fourteenth day of month	
１５日	fifteenth day of month	
１６日	sixteenth day of month	
• １７日	seventeenth day of month	１７日 is sometimes used for disambiguation
１８日	eighteenth day of month	
• １９日	nineteenth day of month	

	Name	Meaning	Notes
•	２０日 ^{はつか}	twentieth day of month	
	２１日 ^{にじゅういちにち}	twenty-first day of month	
	２２日 ^{にじゅうににち}	twenty-second day of month	
	２３日 ^{にじゅうさんにち}	twenty-third day of month	
•	２４日 ^{にじゅうよっか}	twenty-fourth day of month	
	２５日 ^{にじゅうごにち}	twenty-fifth day of month	
	２６日 ^{にじゅうろくにち}	twenty-sixth day of month	
•	２７日 ^{にじゅうしちにち}	twenty-seventh day of month	２７日 ^{にじゅうななにち} is sometimes used for disambiguation
	２８日 ^{にじゅうはちにち}	twenty-eighth day of month	
•	２９日 ^{にじゅうくにち}	twenty-ninth day of month	
	３０日 ^{さんじゅうにち}	thirtieth of month	
	３１日 ^{さんじゅういちにち}	thirty-first day of month	
	四十九日 ^{しじゅうくにち}	forty-ninth day after death	

SB.24 Ordinal days: 〜{日^{にち}/日^か}目^め/第^{だい}〜日^{たち}

Read the main article on Tofugu.

目^め is casual, 第^{だい} is formal. 目^め is 和語 and follows pronunciations from §SB.25; 第 is 漢語 and forces 日^{にち} to take its 漢語 reading.

Table 46: Basic nouns: ordinal days.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何日 ^{なんにち}	which day of month/which day?/how many days?	
	第何日 ^{だいなんにち}	which day?	
	１日目/第１日 ^{いちにちめ・だいいちにち}	first day	
•	２日目/第２日 ^{ふつかめ・だいににち}	second day	
	３日目/第３日 ^{みっかめ・だいさんにち}	third day	
	４日目/第４日 ^{よっかめ・だいよんにち}	fourth day	
	５日目/第５日 ^{いつかめ・だいごにち}	fifth day	
•	６日目/第６日 ^{むいかめ・だいろくにち}	sixth day	
•	７日目/第７日 ^{なのかめ・だいななにち}	seventh day	
•	８日目/第８日 ^{ようかめ・だいはちにち}	eighth day	
•	９日目/第９日 ^{ここのかめ・だいくにち}	ninth day	
	１０日目/第１０日 ^{とおかめ・だいじゅうにち}	tenth day	
	１１日目/第１１日 ^{じゅういちにちめ・だいじゅういちにち}	eleventh day	
	１２日目/第１２日 ^{じゅうににちめ・だいじゅうににち}	twelfth day	
	１３日目/第１３日 ^{じゅうさんにちめ・だいじゅうさんにち}	thirteenth day	
	１４日目/第１４日 ^{じゅうよんにちめ・だいじゅうよんにち}	fourteenth day	
	１５日目/第１５日 ^{じゅうごにちめ・だいじゅうごにち}	fifteenth day	
	１６日目/第１６日 ^{じゅうろくにちめ・だいじゅうろくにち}	sixteenth day	
•	１７日目/第１７日 ^{じゅうしちにちめ・だいじゅうななにち}	seventeenth day	
	１８日目/第１８日 ^{じゅうはちにちめ・だいじゅうはちにち}	eighteenth day	
•	１９日目/第１９日 ^{じゅうくにちめ・だいじゅうくにち}	nineteenth day	
•	２０日目/第２０日 ^{はつかめ・だいにじゅうにち}	twentieth day	
	２１日目/第２１日 ^{にじゅういちにちめ・だいにじゅういちにち}	twenty-first day	
	２２日目/第２２日 ^{にじゅうににちめ・だいにじゅうににち}	twenty-second day	

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	２３日目/第２３日	twenty-third day	
	２４日目/第２４日	twenty-fourth day	
	２５日目/第２５日	twenty-fifth day	
	２６日目/第２６日	twenty-sixth day	
•	２７日目/第２７日	twenty-seventh day	
	２８日目/第２８日	twenty-eighth day	
•	２９日目/第２９日	twenty-ninth day	
	３０日目/第３０日	thirtieth day	
	３７日目/第３７日	thirty-seventh day	
	３９日目/第３９日	thirty-ninth day	
•	４９日目/第４９日	forty-ninth day	
	５９日目/第５９日	fifty-ninth day	
	１００日目/第１００日	hundredth day	
	１０００日目/第１０００日	thousandth day	
	１万日目/第１万日	ten thousandth day	

SB.25　Counting days: {日/日}間

Read the main article on *Tofugu.*

The 「〜間」 suffix here means "interval". While typically dropped in the absence of ambiguity, it is necessary here to distinguish day intervals from days of the month (§SB.23; [WB]).

For formal settings and specifically **days and hours** (with the exception of day of month 七日), 七 is preferred over 七, though the latter may be used for disambiguation with 一.

Table 47: Basic nouns: counting days.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何日間	which day of month/which day?/how many days?	
	１日間	one day	
•	２日間	two days	
	３日間	three days	
	４日間	four days	
	５日間	five days	
•	６日間	six days	
•	７日間	seven days	
•	８日間	eight days	
	９日間	nine days	
	１０日間	ten days	
	１１日間	eleven days	
	１２日間	twelve days	
	１３日間	thirteen days	
	１４日間	fourteen days	
	１５日間	fifteen days	
	１６日間	sixteen days	
•	１７日間	seventeen days	１７日間 is sometimes used for disambiguation

Name	Meaning	Notes
１８日間	eighteen days	
• １９日間	nineteen days	
• ２０日間	twenty days	
２１日間	twenty-one days	
２２日間	twenty-two days	
２３日間	twenty-three days	
２４日間	twenty-four days	
２５日間	twenty-five days	
２６日間	twenty-six days	
• ２７日間	twenty-seven days	２７日間 is sometimes used for disambiguation
２８日間	twenty-eight days	
• ２９日間	twenty-nine days	
３０日間	thirty days	
３７日間	thirty-seven days	
３９日間	thirty-nine days	
• ４９日間	forty-nine days	
５９日間	fifty-nine days	
１００日間	hundred days	
１０００日間	thousand days	
１万日間	ten thousand days	

SB.26 Counting o'clocks and hours: 時 and 時間

Table 48: Basic nouns: counting o'clocks and hours.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何時	which hour (of day)?	
0時	zero o'clock (midnight/noon)	
1時	one o'clock	
2時	two o'clock	
3時	three o'clock	
• 4時	four o'clock	
5時	five o'clock	
6時	six o'clock	
• 7時	seven o'clock	7時 is sometimes used for disambiguation
8時	eight o'clock	
• 9時	nine o'clock	
１０時	ten o'clock	
１１時	eleven o'clock	
１２時	twelve o'clock	
１３時	thirteen o'clock	
• １４時	fourteen o'clock	
１５時	fifteen o'clock	
１６時	sixteen o'clock	

Name	Meaning	Notes
• １７時	seventeen o'clock	１７時 is sometimes used for disambiguation
１８時	eighteen o'clock	
• １９時	nineteen o'clock	
２０時	twenty o'clock	
２１時	twenty-one o'clock	
２２時	twenty-two o'clock	
２３時	twenty-three o'clock	
• ２４時	twenty-four o'clock	
何時間	how many hours?	
１時間	one hour	
２時間	two hours	
３時間	three hours	
• ４時間	four hours	
５時間	five hours	
６時間	six hours	
• ７時間	seven hours	７時間 is sometimes used for disambiguation
８時間	eight hours	
• ９時間	nine hours	
１０時間	ten hours	
１１時間	eleven hours	
１２時間	twelve hours	
１３時間	thirteen hours	
• １４時間	fourteen hours	
１５時間	fifteen hours	
１６時間	sixteen hours	
• １７時間	seventeen hours	１７時間 is sometimes used for disambiguation
１８時間	eighteen hours	
• １９時間	nineteen hours	
２０時間	twenty hours	
２１時間	twenty-one hours	
２２時間	twenty-two hours	
２３時間	twenty-three hours	
• ２４時間	twenty-four hours	
１００時間	hundred hours	
１０００時間	thousand hours	
１万時間	ten thousand hours	

SB.27 Counting minutes: 分

Read the main article on Tofugu.

Table 49: Basic nouns: counting minutes.

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 何分	how many minutes?	
• １分	one minute	

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	2分	two minutes	
•	3分	three minutes	
•	4分	four minutes	
	5分	five minutes	
•	6分	six minutes	
	7分	seven minutes	
•	8分	eight minutes	
	9分	nine minutes	
•	10分	ten minutes	
	15分	fifteen minutes	
•	30分	thirty minutes	
	45分	fourty-five minutes	
•	100分	hundred minutes	
•	1000分	thousand minutes	
•	1万分	ten thousand minutes	

SB.28 Counting seconds: 秒

Table 50: Basic nouns: counting seconds.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何秒	how many seconds?	
1秒	one second	
2秒	two seconds	
3秒	three seconds	
4秒	four seconds	
5秒	five seconds	
6秒	six seconds	
7秒	seven seconds	
8秒	eight seconds	
9秒	nine seconds	
10秒	ten seconds	
100秒	hundred seconds	
1000秒	thousand seconds	
1万秒	ten thousand seconds	

SB.29 Counting positions: 番

Table 51: Basic nouns: counting positions.

Name	Meaning	Notes
何番	which position?	
1番	first position	
2番	second position	
3番	third position	
4番	fourth position	
5番	fifth position	
6番	sixth position	
7番	seventh position	

Name	Meaning	Notes
8番	eighth position	
9番	ninth position	
10番	tenth position	
100番	hundredth position	
1000番	thousandth position	
1万番	ten thousandth position	

SB.30 Counting occurrences: 回

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 52: Basic nouns: counting occurrences.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何回	how many times?	
•	1回	one time	
	2回	two times	
	3回	three times	
	4回	four times	
	5回	five times	
•	6回	six times	
	7回	seven times	
○	8回 / 8回	eight times	8回 is probably informal
	9回	nine times	
•	10回	ten times	
•	100回	hundred times	
	1000回	thousand times	
	1万回	ten thousand times	

SB.31 Counting methods/ways/kinds: 通り

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 53: Basic nouns: counting methods/ways/kinds.

	Name	Meaning	Notes
	何通り	how many methods/ways/kinds?	
•	1通り	one method/way/kind	
	2通り	two methods/ways/kinds	
	3通り	three methods/ways/kinds	
	4通り	four methods/ways/kinds	
	5通り	five methods/ways/kinds	
	6通り	six methods/ways/kinds	
	7通り	seven methods/ways/kinds	
○	8通り / 8通り	eight methods/ways/kinds	8通り is probably informal
	9通り	nine methods/ways/kinds	
•	10通り	ten methods/ways/kinds	
	100通り	hundred methods/ways/kinds	
	1000通り	thousand methods/ways/kinds	
	1万通り	ten thousand methods/ways/kinds	

SB.32 Counting shots/hits/punches: 発

Tofugu: TO READ

Table 54: Basic nouns: counting shots/hits/punches.

Name	Meaning	Notes
• 何発	how many shots/hits/punches?	
• 1発	one shot/hit/punch	
2発	two shots/hits/punches	
• 3発	three shots/hits/punches	
4発	four shots/hits/punches	
5発	five shots/hits/punches	
• 6発	six shots/hits/punches	
7発	seven shots/hits/punches	
• 8発	eight shots/hits/punches	
9発	nine shots/hits/punches	
• 10発	ten shots/hits/punches	じっぱつ also possible?
• 100発	one hundred shots/hits/punches	
• 1000発	one thousand shots/hits/punches	
• 1万発	ten thousand shots/hits/punches	

VA Interjections and expressions

VA.1 Greetings

Table 55: Interections and expressions: greetings. TO ORGANISE.

Expression	Meaning	Notes
おはよ	good morning	colloquial
おはよう[ございます]	good morning	(お早う[御座います]); [polite]
こんにちは	hello/good afternoon/good day	(今日は)
こんばんは	good evening	(今晩は)
お休み[なさい]	good night	
お疲れ	thanks for coming/glad you could make it; thanks for helping	
はじめまして	nice to meet you/glad to make your acquaintance/how do you do	(始めまして)
お変わりありませんか	(after some time apart) how have you been?/nothing untoward has happened, has it?	polite
よろしくお願いします/ よろしくお願いいたします	I look forward to working with you/please remember me/please treat me favourably/please help me	(宜しくお願い{します/致します}); polite; also in Table 56
ただいま	I'm home/I'm back	(只今)
お帰り[なさい]	welcome home	
ちょっと	excuse me/hey	also an adverb
もしもし	hello (on phone)/excuse me (calling out to someone)	(申し申し)
お久しぶり	long time no see	polite
こら	hey! (calling out to someone); hey! (to scold)	
こいつ	hey, you!/you bastard!/damn you!	derogatory
お邪魔します	please excuse my intrusion/I'm coming in ("I'm intruding")	
失礼します	excuse me/I'm sorry/I'm coming in (I'm being rude')	polite
ちょっとそこまで	just out for a bit; euphemism for toilet break	
これまで	that's enough for today	also a noun
お疲れ様	thank you for your hard work/good work/see you/goodbye/goodnight	
また明日	see you tomorrow	
またね	bye/see you later	
行ってくる	I'm off/see you later	
行ってきます	I'm off/see you later	
いってらっしゃい	have a good day/take care/see you (often in response to 行ってきます)	(行ってらっしゃい)
お邪魔しました	please excuse my intrusion/I'm leaving ("I intruded")	
失礼しました	excuse me/I'm sorry/I'm leaving ("I was rude")	polite
お先に失礼します	pardon me for leaving first (before everyone else still present)	
ようこそ	welcome	
いらっしゃい	welcome	honorific; also in Table 56
いらっしゃいませ	welcome (in shops and restaurants)	
お待たせしました	thank you for waiting/sorry to have kept you waiting	polite
いただきます	thank you for the meal (just served); I receive (this meal)	(頂きます)
ごちそうさま[でした]	thank you for the meal (consumed)	(ご馳走様[でした]); [polite]

VA.2 Exclamations

Read the main article for apologies on CM.

Table 56: Interections and expressions: exclamations. TO ORGANISE.

Expression	Meaning	Notes
はい	yes/that is correct/I'm here/pardon?	
うん	yes/yeah/mhmm	
ふむふむ	hmm/uh-huh; murmur indicating approval/comprehension	slang
イエス	yes	
そう/そうだ[そうです/そうでございます]	that's right/indeed (reference to something that was said/done)	e.g. 「そうだよ」、「そうです」, [polite]
そうそう[…]	that's right/indeed/that's it (reference to something that was said/done)	casual
そうそう	oh, yes!/that's it/indeed/I remember	
そういえば	now that you mention it/that reminds me/speaking of which	
ふむ/ふうむ	hmm/I see	
大丈夫	no thanks/I'm good	(そう言えば)
いいえ/いえ	no	(否)
ううん/うーん	um/well/no	
ノー	no/not needed/not allowed	
ちゃう	no/that's wrong/it's not like that; isn't it?/wasn't it?	
もういい	skip it/drop it; I've had enough/that's enough	
ご遠慮いたします	no thanks/I will refrain	(ご遠慮致します); 遠慮の例文から
お願い[します]	please	[humble]
頼む	please/please do	slang, also a verb
{よろしくお願いします よろしくお願いいたします}	please do/please take care of	(宜しくお願い{します/致します}); polite; also in Table 55

Expression	Meaning	Notes
(お/ご\<nn\>)/\<v-te\>ください	please do for me	honorific
ください	please give me (imperative of くださる)	(下さい); honorific
いらっしゃい	please come/go/stay (polite imperative)	also in Table 55
もしよかったら	if you don't mind/if you like/if you're interested	(もし良かったら)
かしこまりました	certainly! (in response to superior/customer)	(畏まりました); polite
ちゃった	finished doing/did completely	slang of しまった/しまいました
ご遠慮ください	please refrain from	
気持ちいい	feels good	also an adjective
乾杯	cheers/bottoms-up	also a verb
うめぇ	delicious/skilled/good	colloquial
その/あの[ー]	um/er/well/say	
どれ	well/now	also a pronoun
何だ	what/what the heck/damn	
何だと	what did you just say (to me)?/what's that?	
なんてこと	my goodness!/good lord!/holy cow!	
なんてこった	what the hell/oh great!/son of a X/holy mackerel/oh no!/holy cow!/damn!	
なんでよ	why? why not? what's wrong?	
どうしたの	what's the matter?/what's wrong?	
\<nn\>{を/は}どうしたの	what happened to \<nn\>?/what have you done with \<nn\>?	
どうしよう	what to do	
どうするか	what would you do?/what to do about it?	
かもしれない	perhaps/possibly (sentence ender)	(かも知れない)
みたいだ	it seems that; as if	polite
みたいです	it seems that; as if	polite
みたいな	something like that/sort of like that/similar to that/in that vein	slang, abbreviation of みたいな感じ
ここだけの話	confidential talk/conversation between you and me	
助けて	help!	
危ない	watch out!/look out!/be careful!	
気をつけて	take care/be careful	((気を付けて)
がんばれ	hang in there/go for it/keep at it/do your best	(頑張れ)
悪い	my bad/sorry	casual; also an adjective
悪かった	my bad/sorry (for past mistake)	casual; also an adjective
ごめん[ね]	I'm sorry/excuse me/pardon me	(御免[ね]); casual
ごめんなさい	I'm sorry/excuse me/pardon me	(御免なさい); semi-formal
許してください	please forgive me	(許して下さい); honorific, semi-formal
お許しください	please forgive me	(お許し下さい); honorific, formal
{反省/後悔}しています	I'm sorry ("I am regretful")	({反省/後悔}して居ます); semi-formal
{反省/後悔}しております	I'm sorry ("I am regretful")	({反省/後悔}して居ります); humble, formal
謝罪いたします	I'm sorry (esp. in written apology) ("I perform apology")	(謝罪致します); humble, formal
お詫びいたします	I'm sorry ("I perform apology")	(お詫び致します); humble, formal
お詫び申し上げます	I'm sorry ("I offer my apology")	humble, formal
申し訳ない	I'm sorry/it's inexcusable ("excuse does not exist")	semi-polite
申し訳{ございません/ありません}	I'm sorry/it's inexcusable ("excuse does not exist")	polite
すまん/すいません/[すみません]	excuse me/pardon me/I'm sorry (general/for the inconvenience)	(済みません); [polite]
済まない	excuse me/I'm sorry	also an adjective
失礼しました	I'm sorry/excuse me/my apologies (general/for the inconvenience)	polite
ご迷惑をおかけして申し訳ございません	We apologise for any inconvenience this may cause (common email/announcement-end greeting) ("I have no excuse for causing you this trouble.")	polite, formal
どうも	thanks (abbreviation)	
どうもありがとう	thank you very much	(どうも有[り]難う)
ありがとう[ございます]	thanks/thank you	(有[り]難う[御座います]); [polite]
ありがとうございました	thank you (for past action)	(有[り]難うございました); polite
済まない	thank you	also an adjective
どういたしまして	you're welcome/don't mention it/not at all/my pleasure	(どう致しまして)
とんでもない	it was no bother at all/not at all/don't mention it	
こちらこそ	it is I who should say so	also in Table 72
気にするな	don't worry about it/nevermind	
気にしないで	don't worry about it/forget about it	
お安い御用	no problem/easy task	
問題ない	no problem/not an issue/all right	also an adjective
構わない	no problem/it doesn't matter	
構いません	no problem/it doesn't matter	
おめでとう[ございます]	congratulations!/well done!	(おめでとう[御座います]); [polite]
わかる？	Do you know?/do you think so too?	(分かる？); also a verb
わかる	I know/I think so too	(分かる); also a verb
だろ[う]	seems/I think/I guess/I wonder/I hope; right?/don't you agree?/I thought you'd say that!	conjectural form of copula だ
わかんない	not understanding/not knowing	(分かんない); slang
どうかな	how about?/I wonder/I don't know	
なるほど	I see/that's right/indeed	(成る程)
そうか	is that so? (rhetorical); I see/right/oh/OK	

Expression	Meaning	Notes
そっか	oh, right/I see/OK/gotcha	
そういうことか	I got it/I see/I now know/so that's the reason	(そういう事か)
了解	OK/roger	also a noun, verb
よし	alright/looking good/OK	
そういうことなら	in that case/that being the case	
嘘	no way! really!? unbelieveable!	colloquial
それはそれは	my goodness (surprise/wonder)	
まさか	by no means/never!/no way!	(真逆); also a noun
まさかの時	in case of emergency/for a rainy day/in time of need	
とんでもない	absolutely not!/far from it!/impossible!/what a thing to say!/no way!	
だから	like I said/I told you already	also a conjunction
お[お/ー]い/オ[オ/ー]イ	oi! hey! come on!	
な	hey/listen/look/say	
ほら	look! see! hey!	
もう	jeez/come on	
まったく[もう]	good grief	(全く[もう])
ったく	good grief	slang
何か	what (are you trying to say/do you mean)?	
え	eh? what? oh?	
あれ[っ/え/ー]	huh? eh? what? look! listen!	
あら	oh!/ah!/oh no	feminine
びっくりした	oh my god!/oh my gosh!/you got me!/wow! (surprised/frightened)	
しまった	darn it!/oops!/oh dear!/oh no!	
やれ	oh!/ah!/oh dear!/dear me!/thank God!	
やれやれ	oh!/ah!/oh dear!/good grief!/dear me!/thank God!	
やだ/ヤダ	no way/not a chance	feminine/childish
そんな	no way!/never!	
ふざけんな	stop messing around!/get real!/screw you!	slang
ふざけんじゃねー	stop messing around!/get real!/screw you!	slang
ざけんなよ	fuck you!/don't fuck with me!/don't fuck around!	expletive
ファッキュー	fuck you	slang, expletive
そこまで	stop!/not one step further!	
いい加減にしろ	that's enough!/cut it out!/get a life!	
いい加減にしなさい	shape up!/act properly!	
しっかりしろ	pull yourself together/get a grip/get a hold of yourself/come on	
さあ/さー	come on/come now/come along (to urge/encourage others); here goes (indicates resolve); well (indicates uncertainty/hesitation); about that/actually (interrupting someone)	
さあて	well/now/then	CONJUNCTION
クソ	damn/damn it/shit/crap	(糞)
この野郎	you bastard/son of a bitch!	derogatory
ちくしょう	damn it/son of a bitch/god damn it	(畜生)
うぜえ	annoying/noisy	colloquial
うるさい/うるせ{え/ー}/うっせ{え/ー}	shut up!/be quiet!	(煩い)
静かに	be quiet!	also an adverb
お腹が空く	to become hungry/get an empty stomach	
喉が渇く	to be thirsty	
以上	that's all	
これ以上	any more/anymore/any further/any better/any longer (usu. with negative sentence)	
つまらない物ですが	it's not much, but... (when giving a gift)	humble; (詰まらない物ですが); [KK]
ピコーン/ピューン/ピーン	ding/ping	ONOMATOPOEIC manga slang
パチコーン	thwap/smack (used when winking)	[PX]
屁をひって尻窄め	there is no use shutting the stable door after the horse has bolted ("squeezing your buttocks after you have farted")	PROVERB
金言耳に逆らう/忠言耳に逆らう	good advice is harsh to the ear	

VA.3 Sentence builders

Table 57: Interections and expressions: sentence builders.

Expression	Meaning	Notes
という	called/named	(と言う)
ということは	that is to say/so that means	(と言う事は)
\<basis\>からすると	judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of	
\<basis\>からしたら	judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of	
\<basis\>からすれば	judging from/on the basis of/from the point of view of	
\<about\>ついて	about/concerning/regarding/as for \<about\>	(就いて)
\<about\>について	concerning/regarding \<about\>	(に就いて)
詳しくは	for more details/further information...	
するべき	should do/ought to do	
すべき	should do/ought to do	

VB 普通名詞 (nouns)

VB.1 Meta: Japanese

Table 58: Nouns: meta: Japanese.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
文字	letter/character of an alphabet	
絵文字	emoji; pictorial symbol; ASCII art	
普通名詞	common noun	
同義語	synonym	
同意語	synonym	
類語	quasi-synonym (similar meaning but not interchangeable)	
対義語	antonym	
反義語	antonym	
反意語	antonym	
反対語	antonym	
主語	subject	
熟語	compound kanji/idiom	
四字熟語	four-character compound word (esp. idiomatic)	
形容詞	adjective/い-adjective	
形容動詞	adjectival noun/nominal adjective/quasi-adjective/な-adjective	
連体詞	pre-noun adjectival/adnominal adjective	
動詞	verb	
五段動詞	う-verb	
一段動詞	る-verb	
他動詞	transitive verb	
自動詞	intransitive verb	
動作主	agent/performer of an action	
能動態	active voice	
受動態	passive voice	
受身形	passive form	
直接受身	direct passive	
間接受身	indirect passive	
過去形	past tense	
副詞	adverb	
変化	inflection/conjugation	also a verb, also in Table 79
助詞	particle	
接続詞	conjunction	
感動詞	interjection	
丁寧語	polite language (e.g. ます、です)	
尊敬語	honorific language	
謙譲語	humble language (e.g. itadaku)	
読み	reading (of a 漢字, esp. 訓読み)	
言い方	phrasing/language/wording/way of saying something	
ワードチョイス	word choice	
文章語	literary language/words used mainly in writing	
文	sentence; statement (computing)	also in Table 79

Noun	Meaning	Notes
文章	sentence	also in Table 79
例文	example sentence	
和語	Japanese language	
漢語	Japanese word of Chinese origin/Sino-Japanese word	
外来語	loanword in Japanese (esp. those of Western origin)	
語源	etymology/origin/derivation of a word	
◎ /二重丸	"very good"/double circle	
○/丸	"correct"/"good"/circle	
△ /三角	not entirely wrong but not entirely right/so-so/average/triangle	
×/バツ/罰点	cross mark/"incorrect"	
原文のまま	sic	(原文の儘)

VB.2 Grammatical

Table 59: Nouns: grammatical.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
物	thing/object	
こと	thing/matter	(事)
<to nominalise>こと	nominalising suffix	SUFFIX
<noun>こと<alias>	<noun>, also known as <alias>, …	SUFFIX
<advice>ことだ	you should/it's important to <advice>	SUFFIX

VB.3 Physical

Table 60: Nouns: physical.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ため息	sigh	
ビンタ	slap (in the face)	also a verb
爆発	explosion/detonation/blast/blowing up/eruption (also of emotion)	also a verb
移動	movement/transfer/migration/travel	also a verb
行動	taking action/act/conduct/behaviour	also a verb
ハグ	hug	
運動	exercise/physical training/workout/sports; motion/movement	also a verb
活動	activity/action (of person/animal/organisation/volcano)	
静止	stillness/repose/standing still/dormant (e.g. volcano)	also a verb
動き	movement/motion; trend/development/change/fluctuation	

VB.4 Directions

Read the main articles on JWA and KH.

For the four cardinal directions, the 訓読み readings are 東・西・南・北. The corresponding 音読み readings are 東・西・南・北.

日本では「東西南北」の順です。 Japan uses EWSN (hence the 東西南北).

西洋では「北南東西」の順です。 The Western world uses NSEW order.

中国では「東南西北」の 順 です。 China uses ESWN.

When forming the four intercardinal directions and eight secondary intercardinal directions, there is ambiguity in the ordering of constituent cardinals. All permutations are possible, but there are some rules for when to use which:

- When describing something native to Japan, use Japanese ordering.
- When forming international and Western concepts, such as compass directions, use Western ordering (this is standardised by the World Meteorological Organisation). Note that secondary intercardinal directions take the form <cardinal>-<secondary cardinal>.

The readings of the intercardinal and secondary intercardinals are simply the concatenation of the unmodified constituent 音読み readings. The only exception is when cardinals describing direction spans come together, in whcih case *rendaku* occurs, so we have 東西 and 南北.

Table 61: Nouns: directions.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
上	up	
下	down	
左	left	
右	right	
左折	left turn	also a verb
右折	right turn	also a verb
先	the way ahead/beyond	also in Table 71
後ろ	back/behind/rear (physical)	[HN]
後	behind (esp. abstract)/after/later	[HN]
中	inside; middle/centre	
～中	during/in the middle of/while (something happening)	SUFFIX
東西南北	east, west, south and north (Japanese order)	四字熟語 [JWA]
東	east (cardinal direction)	[JWA]
西	west (cardinal direction)	[JWA]
南	south (cardinal direction)	[JWA]
北	north (cardinal direction)	[JWA]
東南	southeast (Japanese ordering)	
西南	southwest (Japanese ordering)	
東北	northeast (Japanese ordering)	
西北	northwest (Japanese ordering)	
南東	southeast (intercardinal direction)	[JWA]
南西	southwest (intercardinal direction)	[JWA]
北東	northeast (intercardinal direction)	[JWA]
北西	northwest (intercardinal direction)	[JWA]
東南東	ESE (secondary intercardinal direction)	
南南東	SSE (secondary intercardinal direction)	
西南西	WSW (secondary intercardinal direction)	
南南西	SSW (secondary intercardinal direction)	
東北東	ENE (secondary intercardinal direction)	
北北東	NNE (secondary intercardinal direction)	
西北西	WNW (secondary intercardinal direction)	
北北西	NNW (secondary intercardinal direction)	
上り	upwards/upbound/ascent	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
下り	downwards/downbound/descent	
戻り	return/backwards; return (computing)	
入り	entrance/entry	
＜containee＞入り	containing ＜containee＞	SUFFIX
距離	distance/range/interval; difference/gap (e.g. in opinion); metric (mathematical)	
[お]そば	near/close/beside/vicinity/proximity/besides/while	(側/傍); [honorific]; [goo]
遠回り	detour/roundabout way	
入店	entering a store/restaurant; becoming an employee at a store	also a verb
立ち退き	eviction	
以上	the aforementioned	also an expression
以下	the following	
以外	excluding/except for/apart from/other than/besides/in addition to	SUFFIX
昇進	promotion in rank (of person)	also a verb; [goo]
昇格	promotion in status (of person/institution)	also a verb; [goo]
昇任	promotion/advancement (of person)	also a verb; [goo]
格上げ	upgrade/promotion in status	also a verb
昇級	upgrading/promotion/advancement in grade/class/rank	also a verb; [goo]
昇進人事	promotion/appointment to a more senior position	
昇格人事	promotion/appointment to a more senior position	
降格	demotion/drop in status (of person/institution)	also a verb
降任	demotion (of person)	also a verb
格下げ	status downgrade/demotion	also a verb
降級	downgrading/demotion/degradation in grade/class/rank	also a verb
降格人事	demotion to a less senior position	

VB.5　Navigation

Table 62: Nouns: navigation.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
立ち入り	the act of entering	
禁止	prohibition/ban	
バン/BAN	ban (of an online account)	also a verb
立ち入り検査	on-the-spot/on-site inspection	
立ち入り禁止	no entry/no trespassing/keep out/off-limits	
止まれ	stop (road signage)	
路線	route/line (bus/train/air)	
始発	first departure/train/bus (of the day)	
始電	first train	(abbreviation of 始発電車)
終発	last departure/train/bus (of the day)	[Wiki]
最後列車	last train (of the day)	[Wiki]
最終電車	last train (of the day)	[Wiki]
終車	last train/bus (of the day)	(abbreviation of 終発電車); [Wiki]
終電	last train (of the day)	[Wiki]
急ぎ	haste/hurry/expedition/speed/dispatch	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
大急ぎ	great hurry/great haste/rush	oft. 大急ぎで
急行	the act of hurrying/rushing to somewhere	also a verb
緩行	the act of going slowly to somewhere	also a verb
普通列車	local train (stops at every station)	
快速列車	rapid train	
快速	rapid train (abbreviated)	
急行列車	express train	
急行	express train (abbreviated)	
特別急行列車	limited express train	
特急列車	limited express train (abbreviated)	
特急	limited express train (abbreviated)	

VB.6 Places

Table 63: Nouns: .

Noun	Meaning	Notes
場所	place/location/spot	
ところ	place/spot/scene/site;	(所)
\<nn>どころ	place/spot/scene/site; address; district/area/locality; space/room	(所); SUFFIX
\<v present>ところ	about to/on the verge of \<v>	(所)
\<v past>ところ	just finished doing/was just doing/have just done \<v>	(所)
ポジション	position (pose/vacancy)	
現地	local/actual place (e.g. local timezone)	
町/町	street/neighbourhood	[HN1], [HN2]
通り	street/road/avenue	
丁目	district of a town/city block	
町内会	neighbourhood association	
ビル	(multi-floor) building	
レストラン	restaurant (esp. Western)	
図書館	library	
銀行	bank	
公園	public park	
高速道路	highway/expressway	
高速	highway/expressway (abbreviation)	also an adjective
警察署	police station	
食堂	canteen/cafeteria/dining room/restaurant/eatery	
[お]手洗い	toilet/restroom/lavatory/bathroom	also: トイレット、トイレ
コンビニ	convenience store	
田舎	rural area/countryside; hometown	
都市	city/urban/municipal/town	
扉	door/gate/opening	also: ドア
東門	east gate	
南門	south gate	
北門	north gate	
橋	bridge	
家	house (physical entity)	neutral, [SE]

Noun	Meaning	Notes
[お]うち	one's home/house/family/household (of speaker, by default)	[SE], also a pronoun, [honorific]
部屋	room	
台所	kitchen	also: キッチン
階段	stairs/stairway/staircase	
学校	school	
小学	elementary/primary school	
中学	junior high/middle/lower secondary school	
高校	senior high school	
大学	university/college	
学園	campus	
教室	classroom/lecture room; university department; class/course; school (for specific discipline)	

VB.7 Vehicles

Table 64: Nouns: vehicles.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
車	car/vehicle	
救急車	ambulance	
列車	train/railway train	
電車	electric train	
箱	train cabin	also in Table 68

VB.8 Furniture

Table 65: Nouns: furniture.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
椅子	chair/stool	
壁	wall/partition	
壁紙	wallpaper/background image	
抱き枕	body/waifu/husbando pillow	
枕	pillow	SUFFIX
柱	pillar/post; support/prop/mainstay	
鍋	pan/saucepan; pot; stew/hot pot	
窓	window	also: ウィンドウ (computing)

VB.9 Organisms

Table 66: Nouns: organisms.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
猫	cat	
子猫	kitten	
犬	dog; spy/loser	
子犬	puppy	
魚	fish	
人間	human being/humankind	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ムカデ	centipede	(百足); also a counter for shoes/socks
雑魚	small fish/small fry	also in Table 74
フクロウ	owl	(梟)
鳥	bird; bird meat/fowl/poultry (esp. chicken meat)	
たこ	octopus	(蛸); also in Table 74
うなぎ	eel (Japanese eel)	
鳩	pigeon/dove	
はとぽっぽ	pigeon/dove	(鳩ぽっぽ); children's language
アヒル	domestic duck	

VB.10 Food

Table 67: Nouns: food.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ご飯	cooked rice/meal	
朝ご飯	breakfast	
朝ごパン	bread/sandwich for breakfast	slang/pun (ha)
朝食	breakfast	
昼ご飯	lunch	
昼食	lunch/midday meal	
晩ご飯	dinner	
夕食	evening meal/dinner	
晩食	supper/dinner	
テイクアウト	take-out/takeaway food	also a verb
持ち帰り	take-out/takeaway (food), esp. 「持ち帰りにしてください」 (please make it a takeaway)	also a verb
食べ物	food	
料理	cooking/cuisine/dish	also a verb
肉	meat	
果物	fruit	
野菜	vegetable	also: ベジタブル
果菜	fruits and vegetables	
卵	eggs/egg/roe	
マグロ	tuna	(鮪)
エビ	prawn/shrink/lobster	(海老)
りんご	apple	(林檎)
いちご	strawberry	(苺)
バナナ	banana	
ゆず	yuzu fruit	(柚子)
わさび	wasabi/Japanese horseradish	(山葵)
桃	peach	
ラベンダー	lavender (flower)	
飲み	the act of drinking	
飲み物	beverage	
抹茶	matcha, powdered green tea	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ジュース	soft drink (usually fruit-based)/sweet drink/juice	
汁	juice/sap; soup/broth; dipping suace	
コーヒー	coffee	(珈琲)
丼 /丼	porcelain bowl/meat served over rice	
そば	buckwheat/buckwheat noodles	(蕎麦)
[お]弁当	Japanese box lunch	
[お]だし	dashi (Japanese soup stock made from fish and kelp)	([お]出汁); [polite]
味噌	miso, fermented soybeans condiment	
味噌汁	miso soup	
飴	(hard) candy	
焼き肉/焼肉	Japanese dish of roasted/grilled meat (similar to KBBQ)	
たこ焼き	octopus dumplings/takoyaki	
しゃぶしゃぶ	hot pot dish where thinly sliced meaet is boiled quickly then dipped in sauce	ONOMATOPOEIC
デザート	dessert	
のり	edible seaweed	(海苔)
鍋物	stew/food cooked in a pot	
シチュー	stew (esp. Japanese cream stew)	also: クリームシチュー
パン	bread/sweat pastry	
食パン	(rectangular) loaf of bread	
麻婆豆腐	mabo tofu/mapo tofu (spicy Sichuan dish of tofu and minced meat)	

VB.11 Small objects: stationery

Table 68: Nouns: small objects: stationery.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
書	book/document	
秘書	secret/treasured book	also in Table 74
本	book/volume/script	
帳	book/register	
紙	paper	
手紙	letter/mail	
葉書	postcard	
ボール紙	cardboard	
段ボール	(corrugated) cardboard	
段ボール箱	cardboard box	
箱	box/case/chest/crate; package	also in Table 64
メモ	memo/note	also a verb
ノート	note/notebook/exercise book/laptop computer	also a verb
辞書	dictionary	
計算機	calculator	
そろばん	abacus	算盤
鉛筆	pencil	
カミソリ	razor	(剃刀)

VB.12 General objects

Table 69: Nouns: small objects: general objects.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
双眼鏡	binoculars/field glasses	
暗視スコープ	night-vision scope	
望遠鏡	telescope	
かばん	bag/briefcase/basket	(鞄)
袋	bag/sack/pouch	
荷札	label/tag	
札	label/tag; sign/card/plate	

VB.13 Date

Table 70: Nouns: date.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
日にち	(referring to) the date of an event	「<event>の日にち」
毎日	every day	also an adverb, [HN]
日々	day after day	also an adverb, [HN]
週末	weekend	
先日	the other day/a few days ago	also an adverb
一昨日	day before yesterday (from now)	also an adverb
昨日	yesterday (from now)	also an adverb
今日	today (now)	also an adverb; [goo]
本日	today (now)	also an adverb; formal, [goo]
明日	tomorrow (from now)	also an adverb
明後日	day after tomorrow (from now)	also an adverb
前々日	two days before (an event)	also an adverb
前日	the day before (an event)	also an adverb
当日	the day (of an event)	also an adverb
翌日	the day after (an event)	also an adverb
翌々日	two days later (an event)	also an adverb
先々週	two weeks ago (from now)	also an adverb, [HN]
先週	last week (from now)	also an adverb, [HN]
今週	this week (now)	also an adverb
今週末	this weekend	
来週	next week (from now)	also an adverb, [GC]
來々週	two weeks later (from now)	
次週	next week (recurring event, e.g. TV)	also an adverb, [GC]
前週	the week before (an event)	also an adverb, [HN]
当週	the week (of an event)	also an adverb
翌週	the week after (an event)	also an adverb, [GC]
翌々週	two weeks after (an event)	also an adverb, [GC]
先々月	two months ago (from now)	also an adverb
先月	last month (from now)	also an adverb
今月	this month (now)	also an adverb
来月	next month (from now)	also an adverb
前月	the month before (an event)	also an adverb

Noun	Meaning	Notes
当月	the month (of an event)	also an adverb
翌月	the month after (an event)	also an adverb
翌々月	two months after (an event)	also an adverb
一昨年	two years ago (from now)	casual, also an adverb, [goo]
去年	last year (from now)	casual, also an adverb, [goo]
一昨年	two years ago (from now)	formal, also an adverb, [goo], [HN]
昨年	last year (from now)	formal, also an adverb, [goo]
今年	this year (from now)	also an adverb
来年	next year (from now)	also an adverb
明年	next year (from now)	formal, also an adverb
再来年	two years later (from now)	also an adverb
前々年	two years before (an event)	
前年	the year before (an event)	also an adverb
当年	the year (of an event)	also an adverb
翌年	the year after (an event)	also an adverb
翌々年	two years after (an event)	also an adverb
シーズン	season (sports/four seasons/TV show/for doing something e.g. ski/examination)	
春	spring	
夏	summer	
秋	autumn	
冬	winter	
誕生日	birthday	

VB.14 Time

Table 71: Nouns: time.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
時間	time (concept)/class period	also: タイム
タイム	time (to do something); time-out (sports)	
刹那	moment/instant	
瞬間	moment/instant	
一瞬間	an instant/moment (duration)	
一瞬	an instant/moment/for an instant	also an adverb
時	hour/o'clock	also: アワー
時	time/hour of day/moment (points to specific instant)	e.g. 「１６歳の時私は…」
刻	(referring to) time of day	
秋	important time	also: 秋
時々	sometimes/occasionally	
今	now/immediately	also an adverb
今後	from now on (ongoing event)	also an adverb, [goo]
朝	morning	also an adverb, [HN]
今朝	this morning	
午前	before noon/ante meridian (a.m.)	also an adverb, [HN]
昼	noon	also an adverb
午後	afternoon/after noon/post meridian (p.m.)	also an adverb

Noun	Meaning	Notes
今日の午後	this afternoon	
夕方	evening/dusk	also an adverb
晩	evening/night	also an adverb, [HN], [goo]
今晩	this evening/tonight	
前夜	last night/the previous night; the night before (festival, major event, etc.)	
夜	evening/night (slightly formal)	also an adverb, [HN], [goo]
今夜	this evening/tonight (slightly formal)	
朝日	morning sun/rising sun (the event)	[HN]
日の出	sunrise (the moment it rises)	[HN]
夕日	evening sun/setting sun (the event)	[HN]
日の入り	sunset (the moment it sets)	[HN]
昔	olden days	
過去	the past	also an adverb
その後/[その後]	after that/afterwards/thereafter	[formal]
それから	and then/after that (from a point in time)	
あれから	since then/after that (a familiar past to both speaker and listener)	
これまで	up to now/so far	also an expression
数日	few days	
数日間	several day period	
先	first/before/ahead of; previous/prior/former/recent/last	[HN] also in Table 61
さっき	a moment ago/a short while ago/just now/some time ago	slang; [HN]
現在	the present	also an adverb
最近	recently/lately/these days/nowadays	also an adverb
途中	on the way/en route; in the middle of/midway/halfway	
これから	from now on/in the future; from here	also an adverb
それから	and then (from a point in time)	
それまで	until then; to that extent; the end of it/all there is to it	(其れまで)
未来	the future	[goo]
将来	future prospects (people/organisations/countries)	also an adverb, [goo]
過ぎ	past/after a point in time (e.g. waiting/now)	also in Table 99
最初	first/beginning	
最終	last/final	
最後	end/conclusion/last/final/latest	
長い間	long time/interval	also an adverb
永遠	eternity	

VB.15 Pronouns and question words

Gramatically, pronouns are used in place of nouns and noun phrases. There are question words associated with each counter, see the supplementary PDF.

Regarding the こそあど言葉:
- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {れ, いつ, なた, こ, ちら, っち} are pronouns
- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {の, んな} are pre-noun adjectivals
- {こ, ど, あ, ど} times {う} are adverbs

Table 72: Nouns: pronouns and question words.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
誰	who	
どなた	who; what is your name (どなた[様]{ですか/でしょうか}。; [extra politeness and distance])	honorific, feminine; [TFG]
どちら[様]	who	[honorific]
どいつ	who	rude
誰か	somebody	
みんあ[さん]	everybody	皆
誰	nobody	
誰でも	anybody	
彼	he/him	also a noun
彼女	she/her	also a noun
さん	Mr./Mrs./Ms.	SUFFIX, honorific, familiar
殿	Mr./Mrs./Ms. (in letters to inferiors)	SUFFIX, polite
ちゃん	familiar person	SUFFIX, familiar
君	Mr./male of equal or lower status	SUFFIX
君	Ms./female of equal or lower status	SUFFIX, formal, masculine
こっち/[こちら]	this person (closer to speaker)	equal or higher status; [formal]
そっち/[そちら]	that person (closer to listener)	[formal]
あっち/[あちら]	that person/foreign country (distant)	polite; [formal]
こいつ	this person	familiar, derogatory; also an interjection
こいつめ	this rascal (jokingly)!/this bastard (expletive)!	(こいつ奴); derogatory
そいつ	that person	familiar, derogatory
あいつ	that person	familiar, derogatory
あいつめ	that rascal (jokingly)!/this bastard (expletive)!	(あいつ奴); derogatory
やつ	fellow/guy/chap; he/she/him/her	(奴); familiar, derogatory
こいつら	these people	(こいつ等); familiar, derogatory
そいつら	those people	(そいつ等); familiar, derogatory
あいつら	those people	(あいつ等); familiar, derogatory
私	I/me	formal, [HN], [SE]
私	I/me	feminine, less common
うち	I/me	(内); feminine, familiar, also a place
私	I/me	slightly formal/distant
わし	I/me	(儂); masculine, elderly
僕	I/me	masculine, distant
自分	myself/oneself/yourself/himself/herself/I/me	distant
俺	I/me	masculine, familiar
私たち	we/us	(私達)
儂ら	we/us	
俺ら	we/us	(俺等)
こちら	I/me/we/us	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
こっちこそ/[こちらこそ]	I (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is I who should say so	actually an expression; [formal]
こっちの方こそ/こちらの方こそ	I (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is I who should say so	formal
そちら	you/your family/your company	polite
そちらの方	you	(more) polite; [TFG]
そっちこそ/[そちらこそ]	you (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is you who should say so	[formal]
そっちの方こそ/そちらの方こそ	you (emphasis, used in opposing reply); it is you who should say so	formal
君	you	familiar (equal or lower status)
あなた	you	(貴方); rude (if spoken)/distant; archaic: こなた、そなた
君たち/君ら	you (plural)	(君達)/(君等); familiar (equal or lower status)
あなたたち	you (plural)	(貴方達); rude/distant
THOU SHALT NOT CROSS THIS LINE		
あんた	you	(貴方); rude, expresses annoyance
お前/おめー	you	rude
てめえ	you	(手前); derogatory, inviting fight
貴様	you	extremely derogatory, sensitive, inviting fight
お前たち/お前ら	you (plural)	(お前達)/(お前等); rude
何	what	
どういう	what kind/sort of, referring to what was said	(どう言う); actually a pre-noun adjectival
どんあ	what kind/sort of	semi-casual; actually a pre-noun adjectival
何か	something	also an interjection
一部	one part/portion/section	also an adverb
全部	all/everything	also an adverb; [goo]
すべて	everything/all/the whole	(全て); also an adverb
何も	nothing	
何でも	anything	
どれ	which (three or more)	also an interjection
どの	which/what (way)	actually a pre-noun adjectival
どれか	one of many/some single one from many	
どれも	all/none	
どれでも	any/whichever	
どっち/[どちら]	which (two)	[formal]
どっちか/[どちらか]	one of the two	[formal]
どっちも/[どちらも]	both/neither	[formal]
どっちでも/[どちらでも]	any of the two	[formal]
これ/こっち/[こちら]	this one (here, closer to speaker)	[formal]
それ/そっち/[そちら]	that one (there, closer to listener)	[formal]
あれ/あっち/[あちら]	that one (there, distant)	[formal]

Noun	Meaning	Notes
これら	these ones (here, closer to speaker)	formal and explanatory
それら	those ones (there, closer to listener)	formal and explanatory
あれら	those ones (there, distant)	formal and explanatory
これ	passionate reference/something (subjective) speaker feels close to	
それ	dispassionate reference/something (objective) speaker maintains a little distance from	
あれ	(mutual) memory reference/something in speaker's (and listener's) distant memory	
アレ	hesitant reference/leave it up to listener to interpret	used in gossip
いつ	when	(何時 ≠ 何時)
いつか	sometime	(何時か)
いつも	always/never	(何時も)
いつでも	anytime	(何時でも)
ここ	now (passionate/subjective)	
ここ\<duration\>	\<duration\> includes present moment (\<duration\> either past or future)	[TFG]
そこ	then (dispassionate/objective)	
あそこ	then (distant memory)	
どこ	where	(何処)
どっち/[どちら]	where/which way/which direction	[formal of どこ]
どこら辺/[どの辺/どの辺り]	where (approximate)	casual, [semi-formal]
どこか/どっか	somewhere	(何処か)
どこ[に]も	everywhere/nowhere	(何処も)
どこでも	anywhere	(何処でも)
ここ/こっち/こちら	here (closer to speaker, no comparison nuance)	
そこ/そっち/そちら	there (close to listener, no comparison nuance)	
あそこ	there (distant, no comparison nuance)	
これ/{こっち/[こちら]}	this way/direction (here, closer to speaker) {comparison nuance}	[formal]
それ/{そっち/[そちら]}	that way/direction (there, closer to listener) {comparison nuance}	[formal]
あれ/{あっち/[あちら]}	that way/direction (there, distant) {comparison nuance}	[formal]
ここら辺	around here/this approximate area	casual
そこら辺	around there/that approximate area	casual
あそこら辺	around there/that approximate area (distant)	casual
この辺/この辺り	this approximate area/around here	semi-formal
その辺/その辺り	that approximate area/around there	semi-formal
なぜ	why	(何故); direct/formal/rude, [HN], [SE]
どうして	why/how/by what means	informal, [HN], [SE]
どうしてですか	why/how/by what means	semi-formal, [HN]
どうやって	how/what way/method, referring to an achievement of something	actually a pre-noun adjectival
なんで	why	(何で); informal, speech, [HN], [SE]
なぜか	for some reason	(何故か)
どう	how/in what way/how about	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
どの	which/what (way)	actually a pre-noun adjectival
どうか/どうも	somehow	also an adverb
どういうわけか	somehow	(どういう訳か)
どうでも	anyhow	

VB.16 Pre-noun adjectivals

These are adjectives that occur directly before nouns. There are > 100 of them. From §G2.10.4, these function as pre-noun noun modifiers. These function similarly to determiners in English.

Table 73: Nouns: pre-noun adjectivals.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
我が	my/our	
どの	which/what (way)	
この	this/these (closer to speaker)	
この<number>	part/number <number>	e.g. 「その1」
その	that/those/the (closer to listener)	
あの	that/those/the (distant/mutual memory)	
これらの	these (closer to speaker)	(これ等の); formal and explanatory
それらの	those (closer to listener)	(それ等の); formal and explanatory
あれらの	those (distant)	(あれ等の); formal and explanatory
どんあ	what kind/sort of	semi-casual
こんな	this kind/sort of (closer to speaker/passionate reference)	semi-casual
そんな	that kind/sort of (closer to listener/dispassionate reference)	semi-casual
あんな	that kind/sort of (distant memory/sentimental)	semi-casual
どういう	what kind/sort of, referring to what was said	(どう言う)
こういう	this kind/sort of (closer to speaker), referring to what was said	(こう言う)
そういう	that kind/sort of (closer to listener), referring to what was said	(そう言う)
ああいう	that kind/sort of (distant), referring to what was said	(ああ言う)
どうやって	how/what way/method, referring to an achievement of something	
こうやって	this way/method (closer to speaker), referring to an achievement of something	
そうやって	that way/method (closer to listener), referring to an achievement of something	
ああやって	that way/method (distant), referring to an achievement of something	
いろんな	various	(色んな)
いわゆる	the so-called/so to speak	(所謂)
いかなる	any kind of/whatsoever/whatever	(如何なる); [HN]
あらゆる	every kind of	[HN]
小さな	small/little/tiny	
大きな	big/large/great	
単なる	simple/nothing deeper (joke/coincidence)	[HN]

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ほんの	very little/insignificant/only (e.g. distance/time/occurrence); mere (e.g. child)	(本の); [HN]
ただの	ordinary/average/nothing special	(只の); [HN]
大した	considerable/great/important/significant/a big deal	
実の	true/real	
主なる	main/principal/important	
去る	last/previous (〜○月)	also a verb
来る	coming/upcoming (〜○月)	[HN]
明くる	next/following (〜日/〜朝/年 etc.)	[HN]

VB.17 Roles and occupations

Table 74: Nouns: roles and occupations.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
女	female/woman	
女子	woman/girl	
男	make/man	
男子	man/boy	
子ども	child	子供 may be offensive; [r] also in Table 75
少年	boy; juvenile/child (legal contexts)	
未成年	minor; not of age	
成人	adult/grown-up (age); coming of age/becoming an adult	also a verb; [goo]
新成人	new adult (a person in Japan who reaches adulthood at year)	
大人	adult/grown-up (age and maturity)	[goo]
初学者	beginner	
新参	newcomer	
後輩	junior/younger person	
古参	seniority/long service	
先輩	senior/superior/elder	
パイセン	senior/superior/elder	slang
学生	student	
小学生	elementary/primary school student	
中学生	junior high/middle school student	
高校生	high school student	
女子高生	female high-school student	
男子高生	male high-school student	
大学生	university student	
博士	expert/learned person/PhD Dr.	
教授	professor	
学長	university president/chancellor/provost	
初代	first generation/founder	
社長	company president/manager/director	
課長	section manager/chief	
店長	shop manager	
署長	chief of police	
所長	head of office/laboratory	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
番長	leader of a group of juvenile delinquents/"boss"	
友達	friend	
友人	friend	formal
仲間	companion/fellow/friend/mate/comrade/partner/colleague/coworker; group/company/circle	
相手	companion/partner/company; other party/addressee; opponent (sports)	
彼	boyfriend	also a pronoun
彼女	girlfriend	also a pronoun
<noun>の卵	aspiring <noun>/expert in the making	
将軍	general (military, historical)	
有名人	famous person/celebrity/public figure	
医者	doctor/physician	
警察	police/police officer/police station	
警察官	police officer	
貧乏	poor person	
[お]金持ち	rich person	
冒険者	adventurer	
戦士	soldier/combatant/warrior	
衛兵	soldierguard/sentinel/garrison	
お客さん	guest/visitor/customer/client/shopper/audience/tourist/sightseer/passenger	honorific
お客様	guest/visitor/customer/client/shopper/audience/tourist/sightseer/passenger	honorific
天才	genius/prodify/natural gift	
凡才	mediocrity/ordinary ability	
美少女	beautiful girl	
ネイティブ	native speaker	also an adjective
推し	being a fan/supporter of; one's favourite (member of idol group/anime/team)	slang
秘書	(private) secretary	also in Table 68
配信者	distributor (news/information/media); online streamer	
紳士	gentleman	
婦人	adult/married woman	sensitive if misused on juvenile/unmarried
方	person/lady/gentleman	honorific; [HN] also in Table 79
会計士	accountant	
音楽家	musician	
情報提供者	informant/informer/contact; information provider (computing)	
内国人	national/citizen/native	
外人	foreigner (esp. European)	
外国人	foreigner/foreign citizen/foreign national/non-Japanese	
乳児	infant/baby (below one year old)	
飛行士	pilot	
宇宙飛行士	astronaut	
宇宙人	alien	
～好き	love/affection for; enthusiast of; -phile	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
〜嫌い	dislike/hatred/fear	SUFFIX
話好き	talkative person; talkativeness	
酒好き	person who likes to drink; love/fondness for alcohol	
猫好き	cat lover/ailurophile; love for cats	
猫嫌い	cat hater; dislike of cats	
犬好き	dog lover; love for dogs	
犬嫌い	dog hater; dislike of dogs	
女好き	woman admirer/lustful man; fondness for women; being attractive to women	
女嫌い	misogynist; misogyny	
男好き	amorous (expressing sexual desire) woman; being attractive to men	
男嫌い	misandrist; misandry	
質問者	questioner/interrogator	
芸人	comedian (esp. TV); entertainer/performer (esp. of traditional art)	
美人	beautiful woman/a beauty	
未成年者	minor/underage person	
弱者	weak person; the weak/vulnerable/disadvantaged	
強者	strong person; the strong/powerful	
見本	role model/example	also in Table 79
変態	abnormality; pervert	also in Table 79
犯人	offender/criminal/culprit	
犯罪者	criminal/culprit	
ババ	old woman	(婆); often offensive
問題児	problem child	
バカ	idiot/moron/fool	(馬鹿); also an adjective
アホ	fool/idiot/simpleton	(阿呆); also an adjective
ボケ	fool/idiot	(惚け)
タコ	fool/idiot	(蛸); also in Table 66
野郎	bastard/asshole/son of a bitch	slang, derogatory
ガキ	brat/kid/little devil	(餓鬼); slang
ばかやろう	goddamn idiot/moron/nitwit	(馬鹿野郎); slang, derogatory
クソ野郎	piece of shit/son of a bitch	(糞野郎); derogatory
クソガキ	stupid brat/son of a bitch	(糞餓鬼); derogatory
畜生	brute/bastard	
雑魚	unimportant person/a nobody	also in Table 66
ライアー	liar	
太〜	fat/fatty	PREFIX
おやじ	middle-aged man/geezer	(親父); familiar; also in Table 75
禿げ	bald person/baldy; idiot/moron	derogatory
迷惑者	troublemaker/bothersome person/nuisance	

VB.18　Family

Table 75 lists the names in casual/formal manner. We only use casual when referencing our own family members to other people. In all other situations (talking about other people's family, or talking directly to our own family), we use the formal one.

Table 75: Nouns: family.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
夫婦	married couple/husband and wife	
妻/[奥さん]	wife	[honorific]
夫/[ご主人]	husband	[honorific]
[ご]両親	parents	[honorific]
母/[お母さん]	mother	humble/[honorific]
父/[お父さん]	father	humble/[honorific]
おやじ	one's father/pops	(親父); familiar; also in Table 74
親子	parent and child	
子ども	children	also in Table 74
双子	twins	
娘[さん]	daughter	[honorific]
息子[さん]	son	[honorific]
兄弟	siblings/brothers	
男兄弟	brothers/male siblings	
兄/[お兄さん]	older brother; young man/buddy/fella/lad	[honorific]
兄貴	older brother; one's senior; man older than oneself	honorific
ニキ	bro (e.g. 海外ニキ)	SUFFIX slang
弟[さん]	younger brother	[honorific]
姉妹	sisters	
女兄弟	sisters/female siblings	
姉/[お姉さん]	older sister; young lady/miss/ma'am/older girl	[honorific]
妹[さん]	younger sister	[honorific]

VB.19　Body parts

Table 76: Nouns: body parts.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
肉体	the body/the flesh/one's physique	also: ボディー
髪	hair (on the head)	also: ヘア
禿げ	baldness; bald head	also in Table 74
金髪	blonde/golden hair	
白髪/白髪	white/grey hair	
顔	face; expression/look	
耳	ear; hearing; ear for music	
口	mouth; opening/hole/gap; gate/door/entrance/exit	
喉	throat; singing voice	
笑顔	smile/smiling face	
笑い	laugh/laughter	
嗤い	sneer	
嘲笑	scornful laughter/ridicule/derision/sneer	also a verb

Noun	Meaning	Notes
あくび	yawn/yawning	(欠伸)
キス	kiss	also a verb
チュッ	light smooch/smacking sound	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb, adverb
チュー	kiss	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb, adverb
プチュッ	loud kiss/smooch; squirting/gushing	ONOMATOPOEIC also an adverb
呼吸	breathing/respiration	also a verb
胸	chest/breast; mind/feelings	
おっぱい	boobs/breasts	slang/children's language
心臓	heart	also: ハート
血	blood	
鉄拳	tightly clenched fist	
腹	abdomen/belly/stomach; womb; one's mind/real intentions/ true motive	
お腹	belly/abdomen/stomach	polite
お腹の子	child one is expecting	
上半身	upper half of the body	
下半身	lower half of the body, nether parts	
けつ	ass/buttocks	(穴); slang
[お]尻	bottom/buttocks	[polite]
尻尾	tail of an animal	
おなら	fart/gas/wind	
身長	body height	
体長	body length (of animal)	
体重	body weight	
声変わり	breaking of voice	
羽	feather/down	
翼	wing	

VB.20　Clothing

Table 77: Nouns: clothing.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
服	clothes (esp. Western)/clothing/dress/costume/suit/outfit	
制服	uniform	
シャツ	singlet/inner shirt/buttoned shirt	
Tシャツ	T-shirt (outer shirt)	
カッパ	raincoat	(合羽)
洋服	Western-style clothes	
和服	Japanese clothes	
着物	kimono/Japanese traditional full-length clothing	
浴衣	yukata/light cotton kimono worn in summer or as bathrobe	
ショーツ	shorts	
ズボン	pants/trousers	
パンツ	underpants/panties/swimming trunks/women's trousers	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
靴	shoe/shoes/boots/footwear	
全裸	stark/completely naked/nude	

VB.21　Emotions

Table 78: Nouns: emotions.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
気持ち	feeling/sensation/mood/state of mind	[goo]
いい気持ち	good feeling	
嫌な気持ち	unpleasant feeling	
軽い気持ち	casual	technically an expression
気色	mood/humour	
気分	mood/feeling	[goo]
感じ	feeling/sense/impression	
いい感じ	pleasant feeling/good vibes	
空気	situation/mood/room (esp. 空気を読む)	also in Table 101
感情	emotion/feeling/feelings/sentiment	
心の声	one's inner voice/what one really thinks	
震え	shiver/tremble/quiver (e.g. cold/fear/rage)	
緊張	nervousness/stress/tension/strain; tension (between countries/groups)	also a verb
悩み	troubles/worry/sorrows/anguish/agony	
心配	worry/anxiety/uneasiness/fear	also a verb
後悔	regret/repentance/remorse	also a verb
反省	reflection/introspection; regret/repentance/remorse/being sorry	also a verb
気合	fighting spirit/motivation/effort	
激励	encouragement/spurring/cheering	also a verb
自慢	boast/bragging	also a verb
努力	effort/exertion/endeavour/hard work/striving	also a verb
全力	one's utmost, all of one's strength/energy/efforts	
遠慮	reserve/constraint/hesitation/tact/thoughtfulness; refraining/declining	also a verb
配慮	consideration/concern/attention/thoughtfulness/care/trouble	also a verb
感動	being emotionally deeply moved/excited/inspired (internal emotions)	also a verb; [goo]
感激	deep emotion/impression/inspiration (stronger; with observable behaviour)	also a verb; [goo]
興奮	excitement/stimulation/agitation/arousal	also a verb
性的興奮	sexual arousal/excitation	
涙	tears	
笑/w	LOL/haha	slang
草	LOL/haha	slang; also in Table 101
楽しみ	enjoyment/pleasure/amusement/delight/joy/fun	
興味	interest (in something)	
ガチ恋	{someone/being} in love with an idol/actor	
ブチ切れ	blowing one's top/losing it/flipping out	slang
一人ぼっち	aloneness/loneliness/solitude	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
幸せ しあわ	happiness	also an adjective
不幸 ふ こう	unhappy/sorrowful/misfortunate/disastrous; bereavement/ death (usu. of relative)	[HN]
不幸せ ふ しあわ	unhappiness/misfortune/ill luck	also an adjective; [HN]
安心感 あんしんかん	sense of security	
不安 ふ あん	anxiety/uneasiness/insecurity	also an adjective

VB.22 Production

Table 79: Nouns: production.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
方 ほう	direction/way/side/area (in particular direction); type/ category; one side of comparison; square length	[HN]
方 かた	method	SUFFIX [HN] also in Table 74
仕方 し かた	way/method/means towards a goal	[goo]
方法 ほうほう	(a well-reasoned) way/method/process/procedure	[goo]
手段 しゅだん	tool needed for going towards a goal	[goo]
使い方 つか かた	way of using something/how to use something	
使用法 し ようほう	usage method/instructions/directions	
使用方法 し ようほうほう	usage instructions/directions for usage/how to use something	
混雑 こんざつ	congestion/crowd/jam; confusion/disorder	also a verb
カッコ	(opening) bracket/parenthesis	(括弧); [SE] かっ こ
カッコとじ	closing bracket/parenthesis	(括弧閉じ); [SE] かっ こ と
準備 じゅん び	preparation/arrangements/setup	also a verb
つもり	plan/intention; assumption/belief/thought; estimation	(積もり) つ
始まり はじ	origin/beginning	
開始 かい し	start/commencement/beginning/initiation	slightly formal, also a verb, [HN]
スタート	start/beginning	also a verb
出発 しゅっぱつ	departure/setting off	also a verb
発動 はつどう	kick-start/put into effect (activity/machine/policy)	also a verb
起動 き どう	startup/booting up/activation/launch	also a verb
作り つく	the making/production/components of	
修正 しゅうせい	amendment/correction/revision/modification/alteration/ retouching/update/fix	also a verb
変化 へん か	change/variation/alteration/mutation/transfiguration	also a verb, in Table 58
変態 へんたい	state of transformation	also in Table 74
進化 しん か	evolution/progress/development/improvement	also a verb
展開 てんかい	development/evolution/progression/unfolding/plot twist; expansion (physical/mathematics)	also a verb
切り替え き か	(the act of) replacement	
切り換え き か	(the act of) exchange	
入れ替え い か	(the act of) replacement of interior contents	
入れ換え い か	(the act of) exchange of interior contents	
まま	remaining unchanged/in the same state	(儘) まま
\<v past\>まま	with/while \<v past\> (e.g. eyes closed/lights on/standing/ alive)	(\<v past\>儘) まま
終わり お	end/ending/conclusion; it's over	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
終了	end/close/termination	slightly formal, also a verb, [HN]
完成	completion/perfection/accomplishment	also a verb
結果	result/outcome/consequence	
突破	breakthrough/overcoming a difficulty; exceeding/rising above	also a verb
[お]披露目	[formal] announcement/unveiling/introduction/debut	
披露	announcement/unveiling/introduction; boast	also a verb
収益	revenue (organisation)	[goo]
利潤	profit (organisation)	[goo]
利益	profit; benefit/advantage/interests	[goo]
設け	profit	informal; [goo]
原作	original work	
見本	sample/specimen	also in Table 74
文	text/composition/writing	also in Table 58
文章	writing/composotion/essay/article/passage/prose	also in Table 58
まとめ	summary/aggregation	
話	speech/talk/conversation/topic/subject	
タメ口	casual/informal speech/language	slang
しゃべり	chat/chatter/talk	(喋り)
雑談	chatting/idle talk	also a verb
放送	broadcast/program/announcement (TV/radio)	also a verb; [HN]
配信	broadcast/distribution/streaming (Internet)	also a verb; [HN]
アドバイス	advice	also a verb
冗談	joke/jest/funny story	
ダジャレ	corny joke/bad pun/poor joke	(駄洒落)
ギャグ	gag/joke	
オヤジギャグ	corny joke/dad joke ("dad gag")	(親父ギャグ); slang
下ネタ	dirty joke; indecent topic/bawdy subject/sex talk	
音	sound	
音楽	music	
声	voice (literal and abstract); singing/chirping (of bird/insect)	
歌	song/singing	
演奏	musical performance	also a verb
初見	sight-reading (music)	also in Table 82
曲	piece/composition/song/track	
オリ曲	original piece/composition/song/track	slang, abbreviation
散歩	stroll	
踊り	dance	
小躍り	dancing/jumping for joy	also a verb
映画	movie/film/motion picture	
写真	photograph/photo/picture/snapshot	
雑誌	journal/magazine	
物語	story/tale/fable	also: ストーリー
伝説	legend/folklore	also: レジェンド
伝統	tradition	also: トラディション
神話	myth	also: ミス

Noun	Meaning	Notes
計算	calculation/computation	also a verb
仕事	work/occupation/employment	
使い	<mark>errand</mark>	
引退	retirement (from the workforce)	also a verb
管理	management/control (act of)	also a verb
メンバ[ー]シップ	membership	
登録	presence in register/records; registration/subscription (YouTube)	also a verb; [goo]
入会	enrolment/admission into a club/society/mailing list	also a verb; [HN]
加入	becoming a member of (e.g. a group/project)	also a verb; [HN]
退会	withdrawal/resignation from a club/society/mailing list	also a verb
盗品	stolen goods	
真似	imitating/copying/mimicry (usu. as <adj>真似をする)	
自動	automatic operation	
手動	manual operation	
求婚	marriage proposal	also a verb
結婚	marriage	also a verb
冒険	adventure/venture; risky venture/attempt	
世話	care/looking after; recommendation/introduction	also a verb
掃除	cleaning/sweeping/dusting/scrubbing	also a verb; [goo]
清掃	cleaning/clean-up/garbage collection	also a verb, literary; [goo]

VB.23 Sports

Table 80: Nouns: sports.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
卓球	table tennis/ping-pong	
ピンポン	table tennis/ping-pong	
バドミントン	badminton	

VB.24 Consumption

Table 81: Nouns: consumption.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
必要	necessity/need/requirement	
値段	price/cost	
[お]金	money	[polite]
円	yen (Japanese monetary unit)	
買い物	the act of shopping/purchased goods	
会計	bill (at a restaurant)	also in Table 93
ビル	bill/invoice	
請求	charge/billing (for a service)	also a verb; also in Table 82
試験	examination/test	also: テスト
試し	trial/attempt/test	
削除	deletion/elimination/erasure	also a verb
電気	electricity/electric lamp	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ラジコン	radio control(-led vehicle)	
ロック	lock	also a verb
摂取	intake/ingestion (salt/sugar/pills/food); absorption/assimilation (knowledge/culture)	
おかわり	second serving	(お代わり/お替わり)
遊び	play/playing/game; pleasure/pastime/recreation	
トランプ	(Western) playing cards	
じゃんけん	rock-paper-scissors	(じゃん拳)
じゃんけんぽん	rock-paper-scissors (called out before revealing one's hand)	(じゃん拳)ぽん
クラブ	clubs suit	also in Table 92
ハート	hearts suit	
スペード	spades suit	
ダイヤモンド	diamonds suit	also in Table 101
タバコ	tobacco/cigarette/cigar	(煙草)

VB.25　Interaction

Table 82: Nouns: interaction.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
いくら	how much (price)	(幾ら)
無料	free of charge	
有料	fee-charging/paid/not free	
態度	attitude/manner/behaviour/demeanour/bearing; position/stance (towards an issue)	
[お]願い	wish/desire/hope; request/favour	[polite]; also an interjection
応援	aid/assistance/help/support; cheering/rooting for	
〜 願	written application	SUFFIX
請求	request/application; claim	also a verb; also in Table 81
感謝	thanks/gratitude/appreciation	also a verb
大感謝	great thanks/gratitude/appreciation	also a verb
評価	appreciation/recognition/praise	also a verb; also in Table 90
お礼	thanks/gratitude	polite
希望	hope; expectation/wishes	
切望	earnest desire/eager hope/yearning	also a verb
絶望	despair/hopelessness	
やり取り	exchanging (of letters/conversation); giving and taking (やる＋取る)	
命令	order/command/decree/directive; instruction/statement (computing)	also a verb
優先	priority/precedence/preference	also a verb
絆	emotional ties/bonds/relationship/connection	
困難	difficulty/hardship/trouble/distress	
苦労	trouble/hardship/difficulty/toil/pains	also a verb
名前	name	
存在	existence/presence	
関係	relationship/connection; participation/involvement/concern; influence/effect	also a verb

Noun	Meaning	Notes
関連	connection/relation/relevance	also a verb
初見	first sight/meeting	also in Table 79
連絡	making contact/communication/call/message	also a verb
連絡先	contact information (e.g. address/phone number)	
電話	phone/phone call	also a verb
メールアドレス	email address	
パソコン	personal computer (PC)	
ノートパソコン	laptop computer ("notebook personal computer")	
返事	reply/answer/response	also a verb
告白	confession (of a crime/wrongdoing/romantic feelings)	also a verb; [goo]
自白	confession/admission (when questioned)	also a verb; [goo]
自供	confession/admission (when questioned)	also a verb; [goo]
逮捕	arrest/capture	also a verb
機会	chance/opportunity	also: チャンス
場合	case/occasion/situation/circumstances	
事件	event/accident/case/plot/trouble/scandal	
事故	accident/incident/trouble	

VB.26 Society and culture

Table 83: Nouns: society and culture.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
経済	economy	
地理	geography	
歴史	history	
政治	politics/government	
政府	government/administration/minsitry	
営業	business/trade/operations	
会社	company/corporation/firm; one's workplace	
国際	international	
東南アジア	Asia	also: 東南亜、アジア
中国	China	
日本/日本	Japan	pronunciation: no consensus
日本国/日本国	Japan	pronunciation: no consensus
韓国	Korea	
シンガポール	Singapore	
英国	United Kingdom/Britain	
米国	America/USA	also: アメリカ
海外	foreign/abroad/overseas	
外来	foreign/imported	
言語	language	
母語	mother tongue/native language	
母国語	mother tongue/native language/language of one's country	
中国語	Chinese language	
日本語	Japanese language	
韓国語	Korean language	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
英語	English language	
平和	peace/harmony	
平等	equality/impartiality	also an adjective
文化	culture/civilisation	
アニメ	animation/anime	

VB.27 Health

Table 84: Nouns: health.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
命	life/life force; most important thing/core	
生命	life/existence; one's working life/career; life/life force	
人生	one's life	
生き甲斐	reason for living/purpose in life	(生きがい)
意識	consciousness	also a verb
無意識	unconsciousness; the unconscious	also an adjective
精神	mind/spirit/soul/heart; attitude/mentality	
精神的苦痛	mental anguish/distress;	
精神病	mental illness/psychosis	
体調	physical condition/state of health	
元気	health/vigour	also an adjective
健康	health	also an adjective
汗	sweat/perspiration	
冷や汗	cold sweat	
疲れ	tiredness/fatigue	
疲労	fatigue/weariness/exhaustion/tiredness	also a verb
空き腹	empty stomach/hunger	
お腹いっぱい	full stomach	also an adverb
病気	illness/disease/sickness	also an adjective
苦痛	pain/agony/suffering/distress/torment	
痛み	pain/ache/soreness/grief/distress	
苦しみ	pain/anguish/distress/suffering/hardship	
急性	acute (illness)	
慢性	chronic (illness)	
風邪	common cold/flu/influenza/inflammatory respiratory system illness (generic)	
たん	phlegm/sputum	(痰)
安全	safety/security	also an adjective
危険	danger/hazard/risk	also an adjective
非常	emergency	also an adjective
まさか	the unexpected/emergency	(真逆); also an interjection
一酸化炭素中毒	carbon monoxide poisoning	
病院	hospital/clinic/doctor's office/doctor's surgery/infirmary	
休み	rest/vacation	
昼寝	afternoon nap	
暇	free time/time off/leisure	also an adjective
夢	dream	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
悪夢	nightmare	
[お]風呂	bath/bathtub/bathroom/bathhouse; bathing	
日光浴	sunbathing/basking in the sun	also a verb
ゆず湯	yuzu bath/hot citron bath	(柚子湯)
春休み	spring break/vacation	
夏休み	summer vacation	
秋休み	autumn break/vacation	also: 秋
冬休み	winter vacation	
月見	Japanese equivalent of CN's mid-autumn festival (同じ日)	
祭り	festival	
眠気	sleepiness/drowsiness	
寝袋	sleeping bag	

VB.28 Disasters

Table 85: Nouns: disasters.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
地震	earthquake	
台風	typhoon	

VB.29 Colours

Read the main article on CTA.

Only four colours were recognised as basic colours in ancient Japan: red, blue, white, black. Blue and green used to be both referred to as 青.

Colours are often used as labels, together with the の particle.

Table 86: Nouns: colours.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
赤[色]	red (1, 0, 0)	also: レッド
橙 [色]	orange (1, 0.64, 0)	also: オレンジ
黄[色]	yellow (1, 1, 0)/amber (1, 0.75, 0) (midpoint of yellow and orange)	also: イエロー
ベージュ	beige	
黄緑	yellow-green	
緑 [色]	green (0, 1, 0)	also: グリーン
深緑色	dark green	
青	blue (0, 0, 1); green when used in compound words (fruits/plants/traffic lights)	also: ブルー
深青	dark/navy blue	
抹茶色	tea green/soft yellow-green	
青色	blue (0, 0, 1)	
水色	light blue	
紺色	navy/dark blue	also: ネイビー/ネービー
紫 [色]	purple (0.5, 0, 0.5)/violet (0.5, 0, 1)	also: パープル
白	white (1, 1, 1); innocent; blank (space)	
白色	white (1, 1, 1)	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
灰色	grey	also: グレー/グレイ
黒	black (0, 0, 0); guilty	
黒色	black (0, 0, 0)	
桃色	pink	also: ピンク
茶[色]	brown	also: ブラウン
赤茶色	reddish brown	
薄茶色	light/pale brown	
黒茶色	deep brown	
こげ茶色	dark/olive brown	(焦げ茶色)
銀[色]	silver	also: シルバー
金[色]	gold	also: ゴールド
虹色	rainbow-coloured	
七色	seven/prismatic colours (of the rainbow)	
白黒	monochrome; black and white; good and evil/right and wrong	[WDC]
黒白	black and white; good and evil/right and wrong	[WDC]
白黒テレビ	black-and-white television	
紅葉	leaves turning red in autumn; autumn colours; autumn leaves ("red leaf")	also a verb
黄葉	leaves turning yellow in autumn; autumn colours; autumn leaves ("yellow leaf")	also a verb

VB.30 Shapes

Table 87: Nouns: shapes.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
丸	circle	
ラウンド	round (shape/repetition)	
三角形	triangle	[HN]
バツ	cross	
ハート形	heart shape	
ハート型	heart shape (mold)	
八重	overlapping/multilayered/doubled (e.g. of flower petals)	[goo], [Wiki]

VB.31 Agreeability

Table 88: Nouns: agreeability.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
好き嫌い	likes and dislikes/preferences; pickiness/choosiness/fussiness (esp. food)	
賛成	approval/agreement/support	also a verb
反対	objection/opposition/resistance/dissent	also a verb
素晴らしさ	splendour/magnificence/beauty	
一流	first class/top-ranking	
トンデモ	something unthinkable/unexpected/outrageous/offensive	abbreviation of とんでもない
善悪	right and wrong/good and evil	

VB.32 Appearance and style

Table 89: Nouns: appearance and style.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
イケメン	good-looking/handsome/cool guy	(イケ面)
美少女	beautiful girl	
特徴	distinguishing feature	[goo]
特長	strong point/forte/merit/strength	
特色	superior feature	[goo]
魅力	charm/attraction/appeal	
味	charm/appeal/uniqueness/attractiveness	also in Table 98
愛嬌	charm/attractiveness; courtesy	
匂い	smell/scent/flavour/mood	
臭い	odour/stench	
痩せた	thin/slim/skinny; barren/infertile/sterile	from 痩せる
太った	plump/fat/chubby	from 太る
年[を]取った	old/aged (person)	[HN]

VB.33 Ability

Table 90: Nouns: ability.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
能力	ability	
力	force/strength/power	
領域	territory/domain/expertise; field/area/region	
経験	experience	
独立	independence/self-reliance	also a verb
可能性	potentiality/likelihood/possibility/chance	
偶然	coincidence/chance/accident	also an adverb
必然	inevitability/necessity	
受け	reception/popularity/reputation	
評価	rating/valuation/appraisal/evaluation/assessment	also a verb; also in Table 82
再評価	revaluation/reassessment/reappraisal/reevaluation	also a verb
高評価	high rating/good reputation	
低評価	low rating/bad repuation	
当たり	success/hit	
成功	success/achievement	also a verb
失敗	failure/mistake/blunder	also a verb

VB.34 Personalities

Table 91: Nouns: personalities.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
人気	popularity/public favour	
大人気	high popularity/public favour	
無名	anonymous/nameless; not famous	
しっかり者	person of firm character/stable person/gutsy person	
自信	self-confidence	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ツンデレ	normally cold but at some prompt suddenly lovestruck/hot-cold personality type (ツンツン + デレデレ)	slang
クーデレ	acting indifferent while lovestruck (クール + デレデレ)	
ヤンデレ	person with an unhealthy romantic obsession (病む + デレデレ)	

VB.35 Education and correctness

Table 92: Nouns: education and correctness.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
教育	education/training/upbringing	
授業	lesson/class/teaching/instruction	
勉強	study/diligence/hard work	also a verb
練習	practice/train/drill	also a verb
自習	self-study	also a verb
学習	study/learning/tutorial	
学習法	way of learning/studying/mastering	
教材	teaching materials	
質問	question/enquiry	also a verb
問題	problem/question	
宿題	homework/assignment	
謎	riddle/puzzle/enigma/mystery	
なぞなぞ	ridle/puzzle/enigma	(謎々)
答え	answer/reply/response	
説明	explanation	also a verb
訳	reason/cause; meaning	
理由	reason	
原因	cause	
正解	correct answer/interpretation/decision/judgment	
了解	understanding/comprehension/agreement	also an interjection, verb
理解	understanding/comprehension/appreciation; sympathy	also a verb
同じ	similar/same/identical/equal/uniform/equivalent	
同じくらい	approximately the same	actually an expression
同様	same/similar/just like/equal	
違い	difference/distinction/discrepency/miss (nuance: wrong)	[HN], [SE]
別	distinction/difference/discrimination (nuance: another)	[SE]
不正解	incorrect answer/solution/interpretation	
間違い	mistake/error/errata/blunder; accident/mishap	
間違え	mistake/error/blunder; accident/mishap	
誤解	misunderstanding (objective concept)	also a verb; [goo]
勘違い	erroneous assumption/thought illusion/misunderstanding/mistaken idea	also a verb; [goo]
思い違い	mistaken idea/misconception ("thoughts different")	also a verb; [goo]
心得違い	imprudence/mistaken idea that is a misbehaviour (used disapprovingly in criticism)	[goo]
部活動	club/extracurricular activities	
部活	club/extracurricular activities (abbreviation)	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
クラブ活動	club/extracurricular activities	
クラブ	club; nightclub; sports club; golf club	(倶楽部); also in Table 81
遠足	school trip/field trip/excursion/outing	

VB.36 Academic fields

Table 93: Nouns: academic fields.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
数学	mathematics	
科学	science	also: サイエンス
地理学	geography	
歴史学	history	
経済学	economics	
会計	accounting/finance	also in Table 81
工学	engineering	
計算機科学	computer science	also: コンピューターサイエンス
情 報工学	information engineering	

VB.37 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 94: Nouns: knowledge, truth and reality.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
思い	thought	
情報	information/news/intelligence	
消息	news from someone; someone's whereabouts/movements	
知らせ	news; notice/notification	
お知らせ	notice/notification	polite
情報提 供	provision of information	
状 況	state of affairs/situation/circumstances (neutral, broader usage)	[HN1], [HN2]
事態	immediate situation/present state of affairs (usually negative)	[HN1], [HN2]
事 情	circumstances/conditions/matters (used to explain context/ decision/event)	[HN]
知識	knowledge/information	
意味	meaning/sense/significance	
いろは	fundamenatals/the ABCs of	
既知	the known/established	
未知	the unknown	
承 知	knowledge/awareness; acceptance/consent/compliance/ acknowledgement	also a verb
ご存知	knowledge/awareness	honorific
断 り	rejection/refusal/declination; permission/consent; notification/notice	
お 断 り	rejection/refusal/declination; announcement/notice	polite
由来	origin/source/history/derivation	also a verb
本物	genuine article/real deal	
真実	truth	[HN1], [HN2]

Noun	Meaning	Notes
事実	fact	[HN]
現実	reality	[HN]
実際	actuality/in practice (compared to expectation/theory) (usu. as 実際の or 実際は)	[HN]
理想	ideal/ideals	
公式	official	
偽物	fake article/forgery/counterfeit/imiation	
嘘	lie/fib/falsehood	also an interjection
非公式	unofficial	
妄想	delusion; wild/ridiculous/baseless fantasy	
一般	general/universal/ordinary/average/common	
ただ	ordinary/common/usual	(但); also an adverb
通常	usual/ordinary/normal/regular/general/common	also an adverb
普段	usual/normal/everyday/habitual/ordinary	also an adverb
観察	observation/survey/watching	also a verb
研究	research/study/investigation	
探索	hunt/exploration/investigation/search/lookup	also a verb
実験	experiment/experimentation	also a verb
分析	analysis	also a verb
報告	report/information	also a verb
証明	proof/testimony	also a verb
確認	confirmation/verification/validation/check	also a verb
発見	discovery/detection/finding	also a verb
発明	invention	also a verb
確定	decision (clear)	also a verb; [goo]
内定	{informal/internal/unofficial} {decision/offer (e.g. job)}	also a verb; [goo]
本決まり	formal/official final decision	[goo]
未定	not decided/not yet fixed/undecided/pending/TBC	also an adjective; [goo]
所定	predetermined/prescribed/designated/fixed in advance	[goo]
暫定	provisional/tentative decision	[goo]
予定	plans/arrangement/decision made in advance	[goo]
既定	decided/established/fixed/prearranged/predetermined	[goo]
決断	decision (strong)	also a verb; [goo]
決定	decision	also a verb; [goo]
判断	judgment	also a verb; [goo]
断	judgment	literary [goo]
判定	verdict/ruling/judgment (of judge/referee)	also a verb
断定	assertion/declaration/conclusion	also a verb; [goo]
隠れ〜	hidden/concealed/unknown/crypto-	PREFIX
隠蔽	covering up/concealment/hiding/suppression	also a verb
内緒	secret (in/out-group, personal level)	[HN]
秘密	secret (official/corporate/country)	childish; [HN]
隠し事	secret/secrecy	also a verb
確か	sure/certain/confident; reliable/trustworthy/accurate/correct/exact	also an adverb
信用	trust/confidence/reputation (past)	also a verb; [SE]
信頼	trust/confidence/reliance/faith (future)	also a verb; [SE]

Noun	Meaning	Notes
疑い	doubt/question/uncertainty/skepticism/suspicion/distrust	

VB.38 Courtesy

Table 95: Nouns: courtesy.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ため	good/advantage/benefit/welfare; sake/purpose/objective/aim	(為); also an adverb
エチケット	etiquette/politeness/courtesy/good manners	
悪態	foul/abusive language	
失礼	discourtesy/impoliteness	also a な-adjective
無礼	rudeness/discourtesy/insolence (stronger)	also a な-adjective
無視	disregarding/ignoring	also a verb
面倒	trouble/bother (when there's too much to do)	[HN]
迷惑	trouble/bother/annoyance/nuisance/inconvenience (to other people)	[HN]
待ち時間	waiting time/latency/queuing time	
最速	fastest	

VB.39 Conflict and resolution

Table 96: Nouns: conflict and resolution.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
作戦	tactics/strategy; military operation	
決戦	decisive battle/deciding match	also a verb
攻め	attack/assault/offence	
戦争	war	
戦闘	battler/fight/combat	
大戦	great war/battle; world war (abbreviation)	
世界大戦	world war	
第一次世界大戦	World War I	
第二次世界大戦	World War II	
後出しジャンケン	waiting to see one's opponent's move/playing a waiting game	
後出し	waiting to see one's opponent's move before making your move (disallowed in games); holding back until the last minute	also a verb
勝ち	win/victory (personal)	
勝利	win/victory (larger scale)	also a verb
負け	loss/defeat (personal)	
敗北	loss/defeat (larger scale)	also a verb
全滅	complete defeat/destruction/annihilation/failure	also a verb
不正	injustice/unfairness/wrongdoing/dishonestly/illegality/fraud	also an adjective
脅し	threat	
喧嘩	quarrel/brawl/fight/squabble/scuffle/argument	also a verb
揉め	dispute/quarrel/disagreement	
我慢	patience/endurance/bearing with something (usu. 我慢できない "cannot stand")	
申し訳	apology/excuse	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
謝罪	apology	also a verb
勘弁	pardon/forgiveness; giving someone a break	also a verb
警戒	vigilance/caution/alertness/precaution/being on guard	also a verb
責	responsibility/duty/obligation	
責任	duty/responsibility	
任務	mission/task/role/duty/function/office	
<label>のせい	<label>'s fault; consequence of <label>	(所為)
約束	promise/agreement/arrangement/contract/pact; appointment/date	also a verb
犯罪	crime/offence	
尋問	interrogation/questioning	also a verb
罰	punishment/penalty	also a verb
自殺	suicide	also a verb

VB.40 Weapons

Table 97: Nouns: weapons.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
武器	weapon/arms/ordnance	
刃	blade/sword	
刀	sword (esp. Japanese single-edged)	
剣	sword (esp. double-edged); blade; bayonet	

VB.41 Taste and texture

Table 98: Nouns: taste and texture.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
塩	(common/table) salt	
味	flavour/taste (literal/abstract (e.g. victory))	also in Table 89
もちもち	springy texture/elastic	
プルンプルン	shaking like a jelly/jellylike	

VB.42 Amounts and sizes

Table 99: Nouns: amounts and sizes.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
第〜	prefix for forming ordinal numbers	PREFIX
〜過ぎ	too much/over- (e.g. eating)	SUFFIX, also in Table 71
超〜	super-/ultra-/hyper-/extreme	PREFIX
くだらん	trivial/insignificant; worthless/not worth bothering with/ useless/good-for-nothing	(下らん)
最小	smallest/minimum	
最大	biggest/maximum	
最少	fewest/least/smallest number of/minumum	
最多	most (numerous)/largest number of/maximum	
全体	whole/entirety	[goo]
部分	portion/section/part	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
半分	half	also an adverb
百点	hundred points/perfect mark	
個別	case-by-case/separate/individual	
個人	individual/personal/private person	
全員	all members/everyone	also an adverb

VB.43 Creatures and divinity

Table 100: Nouns: creatures and divinity.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
神	god/deity/divinity/spirit	
女神	goddess/female deity	
天	heaven; God; sky	
天使	angel	
悪魔	devil/demon	
幽霊	ghost/spectre/apparition/phantom	
妖怪	ghost/apparation/phantom/spectre/demon/monster/goblin/ youkai	
幻	phantom/vision/illusion	
怪物	monster	
鬼	demon/ogre/oni	
ばけ	taking on another form/disguising oneself (esp. by spirits/ foxes/racoon dogs in folklore)	(化け)
おばけ	ghost; goblin/monster/demon	(お化け)
化物	monster/goblin	
天国	heaven	
地獄	hell	
巫女/神子	shrine maiden	[YJ]
宮司	chief priest (Shinto)	
御朱印	seal stamp at shrines and temples	
お守り	charm/amulet/talisman	
南無阿弥陀仏	hail Amitabha Buddha	

VB.44 Nature

Table 101: Nouns: nature.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
草	grass/weed/herb	also in Table 78
花	flower/blossom/bloom/petal	
桜	cherry tree/cherry blossom	
山桜	mountain cherry	
満開	full bloom (esp. of cherry blossom)	also a verb
竹	bamboo	
竹林	bamboo forest	
木	tree/shrub/bush; wood/timber	
林	woods/forest/grove; bunch/cluster/collection of something	
森	forest	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
森林	forest woods	
山	mountain/hill	
山々	mountains/hills	
砂漠	desert	
石	stone (small); jewel/precious stone; flint (in a lighter)	
岩	rock/boulder (large)	
原石	raw/unpolished ore/gemstone	
宝石	gem/jewel/precious stone	
ダイヤ[モンド]	diamond	also in Table 81
空気	air/atmosphere	also in Table 78
空	the sky	
青空	blue sky	
風	wind/breeze/draught	
雲	cloud	
黒雲	dark clouds	
暗雲	dark clouds; threatening signs/ominous indications	
雷雲	thundercloud	
かすみ	mist; haze (esp. in Spring)	(霞)
海	sea/ocean	
光	light	
日光	sunlight/sunshine/sunbeams	
月光	moonlight/moonbeam	
花火	fireworks	
水	water	
滝	waterfall	
天気	weather	
雨	rain	
時雨	rain shower in late autumn/early winter; seasonal rain	
時雨	seasonal rain/rain in late autumn–early winter	
雪	snow	
虹	rainbow	
元素	element (chemical/classical (e.g. earth/water/air/fire))	
水素	hydrogen	
炭素	carbon	
酸素	oxygen	
一酸化炭素	carbon monoxide	
二酸化炭素	carbon dioxide	
炎	flame/blaze; passion/flames (of intense emotion)	
雷	lightning/thunder/thunderbolt; god of thunder/lightning	

VB.45 Cosmic

Read the main article on SM. Read the differences between cosmic rocks at AMS.

Table 102: Nouns: cosmic.

Noun	Meaning	Notes

Noun	Meaning	Notes
星 (ほし)	star (excluding the Sun); planet (excluding the Earth); heavenly body	
星座 (せいざ)	constellation; astrological/zodiac sign	
彗星 (すいせい)	comet (frozen gas/ice/dust)	
流星 (りゅうせい)	meteor/shooting star (light emitted from meteoroid/asteroid as it enters Earth's atmosphere)	
太陽系 (たいようけい)	the solar system	
太陽 (たいよう)	the Sun	
日 (ひ)	the Sun	
お日様 (おひさま)	the Sun	children's language
月 (つき)	the Moon	
お月様 (おつきさま)	the Moon	children's language
月見 (つきみ)	moon viewing (eighth lunar month)	
日食 (にっしょく)	solar eclipse (sun is eclipsed (blocked) by the moon)	
皆既日食 (かいきにっしょく)	total solar eclipse	
部分日食 (ぶぶんにっしょく)	partial solar eclipse	
月食 (げっしょく)	lunar eclipse (moon is eclipsed (blocked) by the Earth)	
部分月食 (ぶぶんげっしょく)	partial lunar eclipse	
水星 (すいせい)	Mercury	
金星 (きんせい)	Venus (yellowish)	
地球 (ちきゅう)	the Earth	
火星 (かせい)	Mars (reddish)	
木星 (もくせい)	Jupiter (wood colour)	
土星 (どせい)	Saturn (earth colour)	
天王星 (てんのうせい)	Uranus (sky/light blue, sky king)	
海王星 (かいおうせい)	Neptune (sea/mid blue, sea king)	
冥王星 (めいおうせい)	Pluto (冥 (めい): dark)	
宇宙 (うちゅう)	universe/cosmos/space	
世界 (せかい)	the world/the universe/society	
異世界 (いせかい)	another world (esp. fiction)/parallel universe	
銀河 (ぎんが)	galaxy	
銀河系 (ぎんがけい)	galactic system	
天の川[銀河] (あまのがわ ぎんが)	the Milky Way (galaxy name)	
運命 (うんめい)	fate/destiny	

VB.46 Physical units

Table 103: Nouns: physical units.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ページ/ペ－ジ	page	
ポイント/ポイント	point	
パーセント/パーセント	percent	
オングストローム	angstrom ($1\,\text{Å} = 1 \cdot 10^{-10}\,\text{m}$)	
ミクロン/ミクロン	micron (micrometre)	
メートル/メートル	metre	
インチ/インチ	inch	
フィート/フィート	feet ($1\,\text{ft} = 12\,\text{in}$)	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ヤード/ヤード	yard (1 yd = 3 ft = 36 in)	
キロメートル/キロメートル	kilometre	
マイル/マイル	mile (1 mi = 1760 yd = 5280 ft)	
海里/ノーティカルマイル	nautical mile (1 nmi = 1852 m)	
平方メートル	square metre	
ヘクタール/ヘクタール	hectare (1 ha = $10\,000\,\text{m}^2$ = $0.01\,\text{km}^2$)	
平方キロメートル	square kilometre (1 km^2 = $1\,000\,000\,\text{m}^2$)	
エーカー/エーカー	acre (1 ac = 4840 sq yd = 43560 sq ft = $\frac{1}{640}$ sq mile)	
ヘルツ/ヘルツ	hertz (1 Hz = 1 s^{-1})	
ノット/ノット	knot (1 kt = 1 nmi h^{-1})	
マッハ/マッハ	mach (multiple of speed of sound)	
グラム/グラム	gram	
キログラム/キログラム	kilogram	
トン/トン	ton	
立方センチメートル	cubic centimetre	
リットル/リットル	litre (1 L = $1\,000\,\text{cm}^3$ = $0.001\,\text{m}^3$)	
ガロン/ガロン	gallon (there's a US one and a UK one…, both $\lesssim 5\,\text{L}$)	
立方メートル	cubic metre	
ジュール	joule (1 J = $1\,\text{kg}\,\text{m}^2\,\text{s}^{-2}$; $W = F \cdot s$; $F = ma$)	
カロリー/カロリー	calorie ($\approx 4.184\,\text{J}$)	
メガトン/メガトン	megaton (TNT equivalent)	
キロワット時	kilowatt hour (kW h)	
ワット/ワット	watt (1 W = 1 J s^{-1}; $P = \frac{E}{t}$)	
キロワット/キロワット	kilowatt	
アンペア/アンペア	ampere	
クーロン	coulomb (1 C = 1 A s^{-1})	
ボルト/ボルト	volt (1 V = 1 J C^{-1}; $V = \frac{E}{Q}$)	
オーム/おーむ	ohm (1 Ω = 1 V A^{-1}; $R = \frac{V}{I}$)	
ファラッド/ファラッド	farad (capacitance; 1 F = 1 C V^{-1})	
摂氏	Celsius/centigrade	also: セ氏
摂氏温度	degrees Celsius	also: セし温度
円/¥	Japanese yen	
セント/セント	cents	
ドル/ドル	dollar	
ユアン/ユアン	Chinese yuan	
ギガ/ギガ	giga-	
メが/メガ	mega-	
キロ/キロ	kilo-	
デシ/デシ	deci-	
センチ/センチ	centi-	
ミリ/ミリ	milli-	
マイクロ/マイクロ	micro-	
ナノ/ナノ	nano-	
ピコ/ピコ	pico-	
アルファ/アルファ	alpha	
ベータ/ベータ	beta	

Noun	Meaning	Notes
ガンマ/ガンマ	gamma	

VB.47 Hygiene

Table 104: Nouns: hygiene.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
うんこ/ウンコ	poop	
クソ	feces/excrement/dung/damned/blasted/stupid	(糞)
ごみ/ゴミ	trash/rubbish/garbage/refuse	(塵)

VB.48 Common names

Table 105: Nouns: common names.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
鈴木	Suzuki (last name)	
田中	Tanaka (last name)	
山田	Yamada (last name)	
加賀	Kaga (last name)	
一郎	Ichirou (first name)	
直子	Naoko (first name)	
美恵	Mie (first name)	
智子	Tomoko (first name; female)	
洋介	Yousuke (first name; male)	

VB.49 Character names

Table 106: Nouns: character names.

Noun	Meaning	Notes
胡桃	Hu Tao	(くるみ)
神里綾華	Kamisato Ayaka	
八重神子	Yae Miko	

VC 形容詞 (adjectives)

VC.1 Emotions

Table 107: Adjectives: emotions.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
感動的	な	moving/touching/stirring	
嬉しい	い	happy/glad/delighted	
楽しい	い	fun/enjoyable/happy	
欲しい	い	desired/wanted	
\<v te>ほしい	い	I want you to do \<v>/I want \<v> done	AUX
イケイケ	な	eager/enthusiastic/excited/spirited/energetic	(行け行け)
めでたい	い	happy/auspicious/joyous	(目出度い); also in Table 115
おめでたい	い	for congratulations/worthy of celebration/auspicious (occasion/ending/etc.)	(お目出度い); polite; also in Table 115
大切	な	important/significant; precious/cherished/beloved	also an verb, adverb
愛しい	い	lovely/dear/beloved/darling/dearest	
惜しい	い	precious/dear/valuable	also in Table 112
悲しい	い	sad/miserable	
恥ずかしい	い	embarrassed/ashamed/humiliated	
懐かしい	い	nostalgic/fondly-remembered/missed	
寂しい	い	lonely	
済まない	い	remorseful/sorry/apologetic/conscience-stricken	also an interjection, also in Table 112
気の毒	な	feel bad/sorry/regretful/regret	also in Table 113
興味ない	い	uninterested in/having no interested in	
惜しい	い	regrettable/disappointing/unfortunate/a pity	also in Table 112
残念	な	regrettable/unfortunate/disappointing/vexing	
悔しい	い	frustrated/annoyed/bitterly disappointed (over failure/injustice)	
羨ましい	い	envious/jealous; enviable (position)	
苦しい	い	psychologically painful/distressing/stressful; difficult/struggling (circumstances)	
つらい	い	painful/heart-breaking/difficult (emotionally); tough/hard/harsh (situations)	(辛い ≠ 辛い)
痛い	い	painful/sore; [cringy/embarrasing]	[slang]
きな臭い	い	tense/strained/"smelling of gunpowder"	also in Table 120
眠い	い	sleepy/drowsy	
安心	な	relieved	
暖かい	い	pleasantly warm	
暑い	い	hot	
寒い	い	cold (weather)	also in Table 113
小寒い	い	chilly/a little cold	
熱い	い	hot (to the touch); emotionally passionate/zealous/enthusiastic; hot-tempered	also in Table 113
冷たい	い	cold/chilly/icy/freezing (to the touch); emotionally cold/unfriendly/distant	
つれない	い	cold/unsympathetic/heartless/unfriendly	
疎い	い	distant/aloof/estranged	also in Table 114
心の貧しい	い	ungenerous/poor in spirit/with no great feelings	

VC.2 Production

Table 108: Adjectives: production.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
自動的	な	automatic	

VC.3 Consumption

Table 109: Adjectives: consumption.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
使いやすい	い	easy to use	(使い易い)
見やすい	い	easy to see	(見易い)
読みやすい	い	easy to read/legible	(読み易い)
飲みやすい	い	easy to drink/swallow	(飲み易い)
わかりやすい	い	easy to understand	(分かり易い)
覚えやすい	い	easy to learn/remember	(覚え易い)
住みやすい	い	comfortable/convenient to live in (of a neighbourhood)	(住み易い)

VC.4 Health

Table 110: Adjectives: health.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
大丈夫	な	alright/problem-free/without fear	
健康	な	healthy/fit; wholesome	also a noun
無意識	の	unconscious/involuntary/unintentional	
精神的	な	mental/spiritual/emotional	
元気	な	lively/well/in good health	
平気	な	all right/fine/OK	slang; also in Table 115
病気	な	illness/disease/sickness	
不安	な	anxious/uneasy/insecure	also a noun
暇	な	free/available/not busy/unoccupied/idle	also a noun; [JS]
忙しい	い	busy/occupied/hectic	
大忙し	な	very busy	
幸せ	な	happy/blessed	also a noun
不幸	な	unhappy/sorrowful/misfortunate/disastrous (short term/long term)	[HN]
不幸せ	な	unhappy/misfortunate/unlucky (long term)	also a noun; [HN]

VC.5 Colours

Read the main article on CTA.

Only four colours were recognised as basic colours in ancient Japan: red, blue, white, black. Blue and green used to be both referred to as 青い.

Table 111: Adjectives: colours.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
赤い	い	red	
青い	い	blue; green (for fruits/vegetables/traffic lights); inexperienced	
黒い	い	black	also in Table 112

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
白<ruby>し<rt>しろ</rt></ruby>い	い	white	
黄色<ruby><rt>き いろ</rt></ruby>い	い	yellow	"黄い" is invalid
茶色<ruby><rt>ちゃいろ</rt></ruby>い	い	brown	"茶い" is invalid
茶色<ruby><rt>ちゃいろ</rt></ruby>っぽい	い	brownish	

VC.6　Agreeability

Table 112: Adjectives: agreeability.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
ない	い	non-existent/not being there	(無<ruby><rt>な</rt></ruby>い)
いい/良い/よい	い	good/nice/agreeable/OK	[MK]
よろしい	い	good/OK/all right/fine/very well/will do/may/can	(宜<ruby><rt>よろ</rt></ruby>しい); honorific
気持<ruby><rt>き も</rt></ruby>ちいい	い	pleasant/good feeling	also an expression
結構<ruby><rt>けっこう</rt></ruby>	な	nice/splendid/lovely/wonderful/fine	also in Table 121
すごい	い	amazing/great/wonderful/terrific	(凄<ruby><rt>すご</rt></ruby>い)
素晴<ruby><rt>す ば</rt></ruby>らしい	い	wonderful/splendid/magnifcent	
素敵<ruby><rt>す てき</rt></ruby>	な	lovely/wonderful/fantastic/superb/nice/cool	
偉<ruby><rt>えら</rt></ruby>い	い	excellent/remarkable	also in Table 113
やばい	い	terrific/amazing/cool ("damn!")	colloquial, slang; also: やベー
惜<ruby><rt>お</rt></ruby>しい	い	too good for/deserving better	also in Table 107
問題<ruby><rt>もんだい</rt></ruby>ない	い	unobjectionable	also an expression
悪<ruby><rt>わる</rt></ruby>い	い	bad/poor/undesirable/at fault (says served)	also an interjection, [goo]
まずい	い	bad taste/unpleasant/awful/problematic/unfavourable (says server)	[goo]
気<ruby><rt>き</rt></ruby>まずい	い	awkward/embarrassing/uneasy	
だめ/ダメ	な	not good/hopeless; cannot/not allowed	ダメ is informal, [HN]
嫌<ruby><rt>いや</rt></ruby>	な	reluctant/disagreeable	
いやらしい	い	unpleasant/disagreeable/nasty	(嫌<ruby><rt>いや</rt></ruby>らしい)
不快<ruby><rt>ふ かい</rt></ruby>	な	unpleasant/displeasing/discomforting	
気持<ruby><rt>き も</rt></ruby>ち悪<ruby><rt>わる</rt></ruby>い	い	disgusting/gross/revolting/unpleasant/bad feeling	
キモい	い	disgusting/gross (abbreviation)	slang
気色<ruby><rt>き しょくわる</rt></ruby>悪い	い	weird/disgusting/sickening	
きしょい	い	gross/disgusting/sickening (abbreviation of 気色<ruby><rt>き しょくわる</rt></ruby>悪い)	slang; also: きしょー
やばい	い	awful/crazy/unhinged ("damn!")	colloquial, slang; also: やベー
罰当<ruby><rt>ばち あ</rt></ruby>たり	の	cursed/damned/accursed	
ありえない	い	unthinkable/ridiculous/absurd	(あり得<ruby><rt>え</rt></ruby>ない); also in Table 114
とんでもない	い	unthinkable/unexpected/absurd/outrageous/preposterous/terrible	also an interjection
好<ruby><rt>す</rt></ruby>き	な	likeable/favourite	
大好<ruby><rt>だい す</rt></ruby>き	な	strongly liked/loved	
興味深<ruby><rt>きょう み ぶか</rt></ruby>い	い	very interesting/of great interest	
嫌<ruby><rt>きら</rt></ruby>い	な	disliked/hated	
大嫌<ruby><rt>だいきら</rt></ruby>い	な	strongly disliked/hated	
安全<ruby><rt>あんぜん</rt></ruby>	な	safe/secure	also a noun
セーフ	な	acceptable/fine/OK; in time (for)	
怖<ruby><rt>こわ</rt></ruby>い	い	scary/frightening/eerie/dreadful	
恐<ruby><rt>おそ</rt></ruby>ろしい	い	dreadful/terrifying/frightening/terrible; starling/surprising	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
危険 きけん	な	dangerous/hazardous	also a noun; [HN]
危ない あぶ	い	dangerous/risky	also an interjection; [HN]
やばい	い	dangerous/risky ("damn!")	colloquial, slang; also: やべー
最高 さいこう	な・ の	best/finest; highest/maximum	
最良 さいりょう	の	best/ideal	
高級 こうきゅう	な	high class/calibre	
最低 さいてい	な・ の	worst/awful/nasty/disgusting; lowest/minimum	
最悪 さいあく	の	worst (e.g. situation)	
低級 ていきゅう	な	low class/calibre; vulgar/cheap	
邪悪 じゃあく	な	evil/wicked	
すまない	い	inexcusable/unjustifiable/unpardonable	(済まない); also an interjection, also in Table 107
当たり前 あ　まえ	の	natural/obvious/common/ordinary/the norm	
あったりまえ	の	natural/reasonable/obvious	(当ったり前) あ　まえ
当然 とうぜん	の	natural/right/proper/just/appropriate	also an adverb
相当 そうとう	の	appropriate/suitable/befitting/proportionate	also a verb, adverb; also in Table 121
\<v past\>ほうが いい	い	had better \<v past\>	(方がいい) ほう
\<v neg\>ほうが いい	い	had better not \<v\>	(方がいい) ほう
しょうがない	い	there's no other way/can't be helped; hopeless/anoying/ troublesome/awful	
仕方ない し かた	い	there's no other way/can't be helped; hopeless/anoying/ troublesome/awful	
\<nn/adj/v te\> てしょうがない	い	cannot help but \<nn/adj/v te\>	
\<nn/adj/v te\> て仕方ない し かた	い	cannot help but \<nn/adj/v te\>	
\<nn/adj/v te\> てもしょうがな い	い	it's no use \<nn/adj/v te\>/useless/no good/insufficient/not enough	
\<nn/adj/v te\> ても仕方ない し かた	い	it's no use \<nn/adj/v te\>/useless/no good/insufficient/not enough	
禁じ得ない きん　え	い	cannot help/hold back/suppress (laughing/feeling sympathy/ tears/anger/etc.)	

VC.7 Appearance and style

Table 113: Adjectives: appearance and style.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
\<adj/v stem\>そ う	な	having the appearance of/seeming that	AUX
\<nn\>っぽい/ぽ い	い	\<nn\> -ish/-like	SUFFIX
\<nn/v\>みたい	な	-like/sort of/similar to/resembling	SUFFIX
\<...\>らしい	い	seeming/appearing \<...\> (judgment based on evidence/ reason/trustworthy hearsay)	AUX

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
<nn/adv/adj stem>らしい	い	<nn/adv/adj stem> -ish/typical of/becoming of/appropriate for/worthy of	SUFFIX
こんな風/こういう風	な	this kind (closer to speaker)	(こう言う風)
こんな様/こういう様	な	this kind (closer to speaker)	(こう言う様); formal
そんな風/そういう風	な	this kind (closer to listener)	(そう言う風)
そんな様/そういう様	な	this kind (closer to listener)	(そう言う様); formal
あんな風/ああいう風	な	this kind (distant)	(ああ言う風)
あんな様/ああいう様	な	this kind (distant)	(ああ言う様); formal
かわいい	い	cute/adorable/charming/lovely/pretty	
可愛らしい	い	lovely/sweet/pretty/cure/adorable	
かっこいい/かっこ良い	い	cool/attractive/stylish	(格好いい/格好良い)
綺麗	な	pretty/beautiful	
美しい	い	beautiful/pretty/lovely/sweet/pure (heart/friendship)	
魅力的	な	charming/fascinating/attractive	
清楚	な	neat and clean/tidy/trim	
立派	な	impressive/praiseworthy/splendid/handsome/well-rounded	
背が高い	い	tall (of a person)	
完璧	な	perfect/complete/flawless	
完全	の	perfect/complete	
かっこ悪い	い	unattractive/ugly/unstylish/uncool	
醜い	い	ugly/unattractive/unsightly/disgraceful/dishonourable	
背が低い	い	short (of a person)	
男らしい	い	manly/masculine	
女らしい	い	womanly/feminine/ladylike	
ムキムキ	な	muscular/brawny	also an adverb
色白	の	fair-skinned/ light-complexioned	
色黒	の	dark-skinned	
きれい	な	clean/tidy	(綺麗)
新鮮	な	fresh	
汚い	い	dirty/filthy/messy/untidy/vulgar	
めちゃくちゃ	な	disorderly/chaotic/messy	also an adverb
臭い	い	smelly/stinking	also in Table 112
<nn/adj/v>臭い	い	smelling of/appearing like	SUFFIX
ボコボコ	な	holey/full of holes/dents	
面白い	い	interesting/fascinating/funny/entertaining	
おもろい	い	interesting/fascinating/funny/intriguing	slang
珍しい	い	rare/uncommon/unusual/curious/new/fine/precious	
熱い	い	hot topic/of interest	also in Table 107
つまらない	い	dull/uninteresting/boring/tedious; insignificant/worthless; useless/pointless/disappointing	(詰らない)

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
ダサい	い	lame/uncool	slang
寒い	い	lame/corny (joke)	also in Table 107
裕福	な	wealthy/rich/affluent/well-off	
豊か	な	rich/abundant/plentiful/ample	[TGG]
貧乏	な	poor/poverty-stricken	[goo]
貧しい	い	lacking inner richness/poor/needy	[TGG] [goo]
乏しい	い	shortage/scarce/limited/meagre	[TGG] [goo]
偉い	い	respected/great/famous/celebrated/distinguished	also in Table 112
かわいそう	な	pitiful/pathetic	(可哀想/可愛そう)
気の毒	な	pitiful/unfortunate/poor/miserable	also in Table 107
新しい	い	new/novel/recent/latest/modern	
若い	い	young/youthful; immature	[HN]
古い	い	old/antiquated/old-fashioned (of things, not people)	
独特	の	peculiar/unique/characteristic	[HN]
独自	の	characteristic/their own/unique/original/local	[HN]
特徴的		distinguishing/ distinctive/ characteristic	
特有	の	exclusive/characteristic/peculiar	[HN]
固有	の	inherent/characteristic/perculiar	[HN]
普通	の	normal/ordinary/regular/usual/common	also an adverb
一般的	な	general/popular/common/typical	
特別	な	special/particular/extraordinary/exceptional	also an adverb, [goo]
特殊	ば	special/particular/peculiar/unique	[goo]

VC.8 Ability

Table 114: Adjectives: ability.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
うまい	い	skilful/good	(上手い)
上手	な	skilful/proficient/adept	
有能	な	capable/competent/efficient	
強い	い	strong/dependable; competent/skilled; rigid/solid	
詳しい	い	detailed/full	
に詳しい	い	knowledgeable/well-informed/familiar about	
流暢	な	fluent (in a language)	
ペラペラ	な	fluent (speaking a foreign language)	also an adverb
ネイティブ	な	native	also a noun
強大	な	mighty/powerful	
天才的	な	talented/gifted/prodigious/virtuoso/masterful	
頭がいい	い	bright/intelligent/clever/smart	
賢い	い	wise/clever/smart	
下手	な	unskilful/poor/awkward	
ヘタクソ	な	unskilled/clumsy/lousy/poor/awkward/shitty	(下手糞); derogatory
ポンコツ	な	clumsy/unreliable	slang: ポン
苦手	な	not very good at	
無能	の	incapable/incompetent/inefficient	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
弱い	い	weak/frail/tender; unskilled	
に疎い	い	ignorant/ill-informed/unfamiliar about	also in Table 107
弱小	な	puniness; youth	
頭が悪い	い	slow/weak-headed/dumb	
バカ	な	stupid/foolish/ridiculous	(馬鹿)
馬鹿らしい	い	absurd/foolish/stupid/ludicrous/preposterous/laughable/ridiculous	
アホ	な	foolish/idiotic/simplistic	(阿呆)
忘れっぽい	い	forgetful	
[お]やすい	い	easy	(易い)
<v masu>やすい	い	easy to/likely to/have a tendency to <v masu>	(易い); SUFFIX
簡単	な	easy/simple	
簡易	な	simple/convenience/simplified	slightly formal [S]
難しい	い	difficult/troublesome/impossible (euphemism)	
大変	な	difficult/challenging	also an adverb, also in Table 121
無理	な	impossible/no way/unreasonable	
ありえない	い	impossible	(あり得ない); also in Table 112
めんどくさい	い	troublesome/bothersome/tiresome	(面倒臭い)
めんどい	い	troublesome/bothersome	(面倒い); slang
否めない	い	undeniable/cannot deny	

VC.9 Personalities

Table 115: Adjectives: personalities.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
優しい	い	kind/affectionate/gentle (character)	speech; [HN]
親切	な	kind/generous/gentle (action)	formal; [HN]
心安い	い	friendly/familiar/intimate	
懐っこい	い	amiable/affable/likeable	
人懐っこい	い	friendly/amiable/affable/sociable/loving company; (of animals) talking kindly to people	
素直	な	frank/upfront/candid/direct/honest (about one's feelings/thoughts)	
ひどい	い	cruel/heartless/harsh/very bad/awful	(酷い)
残酷	な	cruel/brutal/ruthless/merciless/inhumane	
静か	な	quiet/silent/calm/peaceful	
冷静	な	composed/calm/serene	
穏やか	な	peaceful/gentle/calm/mild/quiet	
気安い	い	relaxed/familiar/friendly	
平気	な	cool/calm/composed/unconcerned/nonchalant/unmoved/indifferent	also in Table 110
騒がしい	い	noisy/boisterous	
うるさい	い	noisy/loud; annoying/persistent	(煩い)
うざい	い	noisy/loud	slang
真面目	な	serious/sober/earnest/grave	

hardworking,
lazy...

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
おかしい	い	crazy/eccentric	(可笑しい); also in Table 117
性急	な	hasty/rash/impatient/quick-tempered	
慎重	な	careful/cautious/prudent	
軽率	な	careless/rash/hasty/imprudent	
いい加減	な	irresponsible/perfunctory/careless	also an adverb, also in Table 121
気にしない	い	not caring/not giving a damn	
屁とも思わない	い	not giving a damn/not caring a bit	idiomatic
有名	な	famous	
単純	な	simple/uncomplicated; simple-minded/naive	
[お]めでたい	い	naive/too good-natured/gullible/foolish/simple	([お]目出度い); also in Table 107
騙されやすい	い	gullible/naive	(騙され易い)
複雑	な	complex/complicated/intricate; mixed (feelings)	
受けやすい	い	susceptible/vulnerable/prone to	(受け易い)
感じやすい	い	sensitive/susceptible	(感じ易い); also: センシティブ
熱しやすい	い	excitable	(熱し易い)
飽きやすい	い	easily bored/fickle/quick to lose interest	(飽き易い)
疲れやすい	い	easily fatigued	(疲れ易い)

VC.10 Education and correctness

Table 116: Adjectives: education and correctness.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
正しい	い	right/correct; proper/lawful	

VC.11 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 117: Adjectives: knowledge, truth and reality.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
明らか	な	obvious/clear/evident/definite	[HN]
不明	な	unknown/unidentified/obscure/ambiguous/uncertain/unclear	[HN]
知らない	い	unknown/strange	
紛らわしい	い	ambiguous/equivocal/misleading/easy mixed up/confusing	
明確	な	clear/precise/definite/distinct	[HN]
不明確	な	inaccurate/indistinct/imprecise/unclear/indecisive	[HN]
曖昧	な	vague/ambiguous	[HN]
確か	な	certain/sure/definite; reliable/trustworthy/accurate/correct	
不確か	な	uncertain/unclear/indefinite	
本当	の	real/true/genuine/authentic	[HN]
正常	な	normal	
まじ/マジ	な	serious/not joking	abbreviation
がち	な	serious/earnest/honest/real/legit	slang
もっともらしい	い	plausible/believable/seemingly true/reasonable	(尤もらしい)
おかしい	い	laughable/ridiculous/strange/weird/suspicious	(可笑しい); also in Table 115
怪しい	い	suspicious/dubious/dodgy; ominous (weather)	
変	な	strange/odd/peculiar/weird/eccentric/funny/suspicious/fishy; unexpected	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
黒い	い	suspicious/shady/evil	also in Table 111
臭い	い	suspicious	also in Table 113
異常	な	abnormal/strange	
非常	な	extreme/great/extraordinary/unusual	also a noun
不思議	な	strange/mysterious	
信じられない	い	unbelievable/incredible	
正直	な	honest/frank/candid	also an adverb
平等	の	equal/impartial	also a noun
untruthful			
unequal			

VC.12 Courtesy

Table 118: Adjectives: courtesy.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
[ご]丁寧	な	polite/courteous/civil; conscientious/thorough/careful	[honorific]
失礼	な	discourteous/impolite	also a noun
無礼	な	rude/discourteous/insolent (stronger)	also a noun
速い	い	fast	
高速	な	high-speed/rapid/express	also a noun
急速	な	rapid (progress)	
早い	い	early/too early	
遅い	い	slow/late (in the day)/late (behind time)	
重い	い	slow/sluggish/laggy	also in Table 121

VC.13 Conflict and resolution

Table 119: Adjectives: conflict and resolution.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
不正	な	unjust/unfair/dishonest/illegal	also a noun

VC.14 Taste and texture

Read the main article for the five basic flavours on CTA.

More here

Table 120: Adjectives: taste and texture.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
おいしい	い	good-tasting/delicious/tasty	(美味しい)
うまい	い	delicious	(美味い/旨い [SKJnKKS])
うめぇ/うめえ/うめー	い	expressi delicious/skilled/good	colloquial
酸っぱい	い	sour	
甘い	い	sweet	
苦い	い	bitter	
辛い	い	spicy	
塩っぱい	い	salty	

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
ふわふわ	の	soft/fluffy/spongy	ONOMATOPOEIC also an adverb
きな臭い	い	smelling burnt/scorched	also in Table 107

VC.15 Amounts and sizes

Table 121: Adjectives: amounts and sizes.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
でかい	い	huge/big/gargantuan	slang
大きい	い	big/large/great	
すごい	い	vast (in numbers)/to a great extent	(凄い)
いい加減	な	already enough (experssing wish for something to end), see いい加減にする	also an adverb, also in Table 115
大〜	な	large/great/huge/major/important/serious/severe	PREFIX
相当	な	considerable/substantial	
小さい	い	small/little/tiny	
ちいちゃい	い	small/little/tiny	(小ちゃい); slang
ちっちゃい	い	tiny/wee	(小っちゃい); slang
高い	い	high/tall; expensive	
低い	い	low/short	
安い	い	cheap	
深い	い	deep; profound; dense/thick; close (relationship); intense/strong; late	
浅い	い	shallow/superficial; slight (wound); light (sleep); pale (colour); inadequate (knowledge); early/young (e.g. night/season)	
関係ない	い	unrelated/irrelevant	
重い	い	heavy (weight/feeling)	also in Table 118
軽い	い	light (weight/feeling)	also in Table 118
太い	い	thick (diameter); deep/sonorous (of voice)	[HN]
細い	い	thin/slender (diameter); thin/sparse (of voice)	[HN]
スリム	な	slim	
厚い	い	thick (sheets/strength)	[HN]
薄い	い	thin (sheets/strength)	[HN]
短い	い	short/brief (length) (spacial/temporal/detail)	
長い	い	long (length) (spacial/temporal)	
末永い	い	everlasting/permanent/very long/many years of	
近い	い	near (distance) (spacial/temporal/relationship/similarity)	
遠い	い	far (distance) (spacial/temporal/relationship/similarity)	
広い	い	wide/spacious/vast	
狭い	い	narrow/confined/cramped	
大量	の	massive quantity	[HN]
多い	い	many/large quantity of (esp. countable); frequent	[GMN]
多量	の	much/large amount of (esp. uncountable)	[HN], [GMN], [goo]
十分	な	enough/sufficient/plenty/adequate/satisfactory	also an adverb
たくさん	の	a lot/lots/plenty/much/a great deal; enough/too much	(沢山); also an adverb; [goo]
いっぱい	の	full/filled/overflowing	(一杯); also a noun and adverb; [goo]
色々	な	various/all sorts of	slang: いろんな (Table 73)

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
必要	な	essential/necessary	also a noun
必要ない	い	unnecessary/not needed	
不必要	な	unnecessary/needless	
不要	の	unnecessary/unneeded	
結構	な	not needing any more ("I'm fine/no thank you")/sufficient/enough	also in Table 112
不用	の	disused/unused	
少量	の	small quantity	
少ない	い	few/a little/scarce/insufficient; seldom	
久しい	い	long (time that has passed)/old (story)	
久しぶり	の	long time (since the last time)	
深刻	な	serious/severe/grave (of a crisis)	
重い	い	serious/severe/critical (punishment/illness)	also in Table 118
軽い	い	non-serious/minor/unimportant/trivial (punishment/illness)	also in Table 118
大変	な	serious/dreadful/terrible	also an adverb, also in Table 114

VC.16 Change

Table 122: Adjectives: change.

Adjective	類	Meaning	Notes
変わらない	い	constant/invariant	

VD 動詞 (verbs)

VD.1 Physical

Table 123: Verbs: physical.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
動かす	う	to move/shift/stir/budge/change position; to inspire/mobilise/deploy		動く	う	to move; to stir/shift/shake/swing; to be influenced	
移動する	E	to move/transfer/migrate		移動する	E	to move/travel	
-				運動する	E	to exercise/train/workout/do sports	
-				活動する	E	to be active (of person/organisation/animal/volcano/etc.)	
-				静止する	E	to be still/still/dormant (e.g. volcano)	
-				行動する	E	to act/take action	
止める	る	to stop/turn off; to park; to suppress/hold (cough/tears/breath); to relieve (pain)		止まる	う	to stop moving/come to a stop/be stopped/perch on (of birds)	
指す	う	to point; to identify/indicate/point out		-			
触る	う	to touch/feel (intentional)	[goo]	触る	う	to touch (intentional)	[goo]
OにSを触れる	る	to touch O using S (unintentional) ???	[goo]	触れる	る	to touch/feel (unintentional); to touch/refer to a subject	[goo]
?				接する	E	to be close to/in contact (abstract; information/geographical border)	[goo]
抱く	う	to embrace/hug/hold in one's arms (e.g. baby)		-			
抱きしめる	る	to embrace closely/hug someone close/hold someone tight	(抱き締める)	-			
ハグする	E	to hug		ハグする	E	to hug	
噛む	う	to bite/chew		-			
持つ	う	to hold (in hand)/take/carry/possess; hold meeting		-			
押さえる	る	to pin down/hold in place/hold steady		-			
-				座る	う	to sit/squat	
掛ける	る	to sit down/take a seat; to rest against (に-marked)		-			
腰を掛ける	る	to sit down/take a seat		-			
横たえる	る	to lay down		横たわる	う	to lie down/stretch out	
伏せる	る	to turn over/lay face down; to point/cast down (gaze/head)	also in Table 133	伏せる	る	to lie flat on the ground	
残す	う	to leave behind	also in Table 127	残る	う	to remain/be left behind	also in Table 127
押す	う	to press/push/exert pressure on; to stamp (seal)		-			
当てる	る	to hit/put on/hold against; to apply (patch/eye-mask)	[HN]	当たる	う	to be hit/strike (e.g. a target/lottery/by an ailment)	
打つ	う	to hit/strike/beat/punch (strong)	[goo] [HN]	打たれる	る	to be struck/beaten (strong)	
叩く	う	to (repeatedly) strike/hit/slap/tap/pat/clap (hands); to attack/criticise/flame an idea	also in Table 127; [goo]	-			
殴る	う	to strike/hit/beat/punch someone	[goo]	-			
ぶつ	う	to hit someone; strike/beat (stronger)	(打つ): [goo] [HN]	?			
ぶつける	る	to hit someone's head/crash into	(打付ける): [HN]	ぶつかる	う	to bump/crash into (large objects)	[HN]
ボコボコにする	E	to viciously beat up/hit and kick repeatedly	slang	-			
ボッコボコにする	E	to severely beat up (emphatic)	slang	-			
しばく	う	to strike (with stick/whip); to hit/punch/kick/beat		-			
ビンタする	E	to slap (esp. in the face)		-			
刺す	う	to pierce/stab/prick/thrust	also in Table 128	刺さる	う	to pierce/get lodged/get stuck into	
撃つ	う	to shoot (gun/person/beam)		-			
貫通する	E	to pass/go/penetrate/pierce through (of bullet/arrow)		貫通する	E	to pass/go/penetrate/pierce through (bullet/arrow)	
漏らす	う	to let leak out (water/light/secret/information)		漏れる	る	to leak out/escape/shine through	[HN]
バラす	う	to expose/disclose/reveal/give away (secret)	slang	バレる	る	to leaked out/be exposed/be found out (of a secret/lie/improper behaviour)	slightly casual, [HN]
<v stem>漏らす	う	to forget to do <v stem>	SUFFIX	-			
振り返る	う	to turn one's head towards; to think back/reminisce/reflect on		振り返る	う	to turn around/look back	
吐く	う	to expel from mouth (breathe/spit/vomit)	[goo]	-			
つく	う	to sigh; to tell a lie; to use foul language (all other cases, use 吐く)	(吐く): [HN]	-			
嘘をつく	う	to tell a lie		-			
吹く	う	to blow air through pursed lips	[goo]	-			
さらす	う	to expose to (sun/danger; に-suffixed); to rinse/soak (vegetables)	(晒す)	-			
さらす	う	to doxx/make someone's private information public	slang	-			
-				日光浴する	E	to sunbathe/bask in the sun	
-				爆発する	E	to explode/detonate/blast/blow up/erupt; to outburst/explode/erupt (emotion)	

VD.2 Directions

Table 124: Verbs: directions.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				行く	う	to go/move through/proceed/reach (information/phase)	
-				<v te>て[い]く	う	{to <v te> and go (spatial; to <v te> gradually/progressively into the future (temporal)}	(行く); AUX, [formal]
持っていく	う	to take/bring/carry something along		-			
進める	る	to advance/move forward	also in Table 134	進む	う	to advance/go forward	also in Table 134
-				急行する	E	to hurry/rush to somewhere	
-				緩行する	E	to go slowly to somewhere	
急ぐ	う	to hurry (someone to do)/rush/hasten/urge/push/make something happen sooner (oft. causative 急がせる)		急ぐ	う	to hurry/rush	
-				急く	う	to hurry/rush	
目指す	う	to aim at/for/to do/to become		-			
-				去る	う	to leave/go away; to pass/elapse (e.g. seasons)	also an adjective
-				来る	E	to come/approach/arrive	
-				出て来る	E	to come out/emerge	

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				見える	る	to come	honorific; also in Table 128
-				<v te>てくる	E	{to <v te> and come back (spatial); to <v te> up to the present (temporal)}	(来る); AUX, [SE1], [SE2]
持ってくる	う	to take/bring/carry something over		-			
離す	う	to separate/part/divide/keep apart		離れる	る	to be separated/apart/distant/disconnected; to leave/go away	also in Table 127
-				逆らう	う	to go against/oppose/defy	
帰す	う	to send back/home (animate)	[HN]	帰る	う	to return/go back/go home (animate)	[HN]
還す	う	to send back to origin (grander scale)	[HN], [KRS]	還る	う	to return back to origin (grander scale)	[HN], [KRS]
返す	う	to return/put something back (inaminate)	[HN]	返る	う	to return/go back (inaminate)	[HN]
過ごす	う	to spend/pass/lead (time/life); to overdo (esp. alcohol consumption)		過ぎる	る	to pass through/by; to pass (time/life); to have expired	
?				上る	う	to ascend/go up/go upwards (focus on process)	[goo]
?				登る	う	to go to a higher place	[goo]
?				昇る	う	to rise (sun); be promoted in rank	[goo]
上げる	る	to raise; to do up (one's hair); to fly (kite)/launch (fireworks); to land (a boat); to show someone in/away; to enrol (school)		上がる	う	to rise (focus on destination); to enter (from outside); to enrol/promote (school); to come ashore; to lift (rain); to spoil/die (e.g. battery)	[goo], [HK]
持ち上げる	る	to elevate/raise/lift up		-			
乗せる	る	to pick up passenger/load goods		乗る	う	to board/embark	
拾う	う	to pick up (item); book a taxi		-			
起こす	う	to make upright/wake up	[goo]	起きる	る	to rise/wake up; to occur (esp. unfavourable incidents)	
かける	る	to hang up/let hang/suspend from/hoist/raise (e.g. coat/painting)	(掛ける)	かかる	う	to hang	(掛かる)
壁にかける	る	to hang on the wall	(壁に掛ける)	壁にかかる	う	to hang on the wall	(壁に掛かる)
下す	う	w to make a decision/draw a conclusion (of 決定、評決、判決、結論)		下る	う	to descend/go down/go downwards (focus on process)	
下ろす	う	to take down/bring down/lower (generic, destination often mentioned)	[goo]	下りる	る	to go to a lower place	
?				沈む	う	to set (sun); be sunken/submerged	
下げる	る	to bring down/lower (hinged or small movement)	[goo]	下がる	う	to go downwards/step backwards (focus on destination)	[HN]
降ろす	う	to drop off passenger/unload goods; oust		降りる	る	to alight/disembark	
落とす	う	to drop/let fall; be defeated/rejected; download/copy		落ちる	る	to fall/drop/collapse/crash (focus on fall); be defeated/fail	[HN]
倒す	う	to knock down/turn on its side/recline	also in Table 135	倒れる	る	to fall/collapse (focus on ground); to fold/go bankrupt (organisation)	also in Table 135; [HN]
除く	う	to exclude/remove (esp. something unnecessary); esp. 除けば (aside from/excluding)	[goo]	-			
退ける	る	to put/move out of the way	[goo], [HN]	どく	う	to step aside/move out of the way/make way	(退く); [HN]
退ける	る	to put/move out of the way (wider usage as auxiliary)	[HN]	のく	う	to step aside/move out of the way/make way (wider usage as auxiliary)	(退く); [HN]
どかす	う	to remove/move out of the way	(退かす)	-			
押しのける	る	to physically push aside	(押し退ける)	-			
-				立ち退く	う	to evict/evacuate/be displaced	
-				左折する	E	to make a left turn	
-				右折する	E	to make a right turn	
戻す	う	to put back/return/revert state/turn back (clock hand)		戻る	う	to turn back/return/go back	
-				降る	う	to fall (rain/snow/ash); to beam down (sunlight/moonlight/luck/misfortune)	
入れる	る	to put in/bring in/let in/insert/install (software)		入る	う	to enter/arrive/join/get into/fit into	[HN]
-				立ち入る	う	to trespass/intrude/interfere/pry/delve deeper	
<stem>込む	う	to go/put into; to completely become; to do thoroughly/sufficiently; to remain (seated/silent)		-			
差し込む	う	to insert/put/thrust/plug in; to shine/stream in (light)	SUFFIX	-			
-				入店する	E	to enter a store/restaurant; to become an employee at a store	
出す	う	to take out/get out/publish/send (letter)/produce	CN 出〜	出る	る	to exit/leave/come out/flow/appear/answer (phone/door)	incl. CN 出〜 usages
取り出す	う	to take out/pick out; to retrieve/recover		-			
<v stem>出す	う	to begin to <v stem>; to <v stem> out (e.g. jump out, carry out)	SUFFIX	-			
追い出す	う	to expel/drive/chase out		-			
抜く	う	to pull out/extract/unplug; omit/skip/pass		抜ける	る	to come out/fall out/be extracted; be omitted/missing	
抜け出す	う	to slip out/sneak away/break free		抜け出る	る	to slip out/steal out	
抜き出す	う	to pick/single/select out		?			
減らす	う	to decrease		減る	う	to decrease	
増やす	う	to increase		増える	る	to increase	
-				相当する	E	to correspond/be equivalent (in meaning/function); to be proportionate to; to be worthy/deserving of	
開ける	る	to open (business/general; revealing vacant space)	[TFG]	開く	う	to open (business/general; revealing vacant space)	[goo], [HN], [TFG]
開く	う	to open (focus on non-linear unfolding movement)	[goo], [HN], [TFG]	開く	う	to open (focus on non-linear unfolding movement)	[goo], [HN], [TFG]
				開ける	る	to unfold (figurative/formal); view/development/path forward	[TFG]
空ける	る	to clear/empty out/make space; leave/be temporarily away		-			
-				明ける	る	to dawn/begin (day/new year); leave schedule free/make time for	
閉じる	う	to close/shut (business/general/non-linear folding)	[goo], [SE]	閉じる	う	to close/shut (business/general/non-linear folding)	[goo], [SE]
閉める	る	to close/shut (focus on linear movement)	[goo], [SE]	閉まる	う	to close/shut (focus on linear movement)	[SE]
-				昇進する	E	to be promoted/rise in rank (of person)	[goo]
-				昇格する	E	to be promoted in status (of person/institution)	[goo]
-				昇任する	E	to be promoted/advance (of person)	[goo]
格上げする	E	to promote/upgrade to (に-marked)		-			
-				昇級する	E	to upgrade/promote/advance in grade/class/rank	[goo]
-				降格する	E	to be demoted/drop in rank (of person/institution)	
-				降任する	E	to be demoted (of person)	
格下げする	E	to demote/downgrade to (に-marked)		-			
-				降級する	E	to downgrade/demote/degrade in grade/class/rank	
呼吸する	E	to breathe		呼吸する	E	to breathe/respire	

VD.3 Clothing

TO READ TO READ TO READ TO READ

Table 125: Verbs: clothing.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
つける 付ける							
かぶる	う	to put on (head)/be covered with/shoulder responsibility	(被る); [IG]	-			
かける	る	to wear/put on (glasses/coat)	(掛ける)	-			
メガネをかける	る	to wear/put on glasses	(眼鏡を掛ける)	-			
着る	る	to wear (upper body)	[IG]	-			
{履く 穿く}	う	to put on (lower body: pants, skirt, shoes)	[IG]	-			
脱ぐ	う	to take off/undress (head/upper body/lower body)	[IG]	-			
着替える	る	to change one's clothes		着替える	る	to change one's clothes	

VD.4 Emotions

Table 126: Verbs: emotions.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
想う	う	to think/feel (heart-felt nuance)		-			
感じる	る	to feel/experience		-			
感じ取る	う	to perceive/sense		-			
-				気がする	E	to feel (as if; usu. after 〜たい/された); to feel like doing (usu. negative)	
喜ぶ	う	to be delighted/pleased by; to congratulate; to welcome (proposal/advice)		喜ぶ	う	to be delighted/glad/pleased/rejoice	
-				笑う	う	to laugh; to smile; to sneer/ridicule	[goo]
-				微笑む	う	to smile	[goo]
-				ニヤニヤする	E	to grin/smirk	
嘲笑する	E	to scorn/ridicule/sneer at		-			
-				幸せにする	E	to bring someone happiness/make someone happy	
?				震える	る	to shiver/quiver/tremble (e.g. cold/fear/rage)	
-				緊張する	E	to be nervous/stressed/tense	
心配する	E	to worry/fear about		-			
-				ビビる	う	to feel nervous/afraid/self-conscious; [to be startled/surprised/shocked/frightened/spooked]	[slang]
悩ます	う	to worry/trouble/torment/burden/harass		悩む	う	to be worried/troubled	
-				ソワソワする	E	to be restless/nervous/uneasy/in a fidget	ONOMATOPOEIC
-				イライラする	E	to be irritated/annoyed; to fret/worry/be on the edge; to be impatient/lose patience	(苛々する); ONOMATOPOEIC
後悔する	E	to regret/repent		後悔する	E	to be regretful/remorseful	
反省する	E	to reflect/introspect; to regret/repent		-			
-				ツンツンする	E	to be prickly/standoffish/cold/aloof	also an adverb
-				ムカムカする	E	to feel sick/queasy/nauseated/disgusted	also an adverb
誇りに思う	う	to be proud of (neutral connotation)	[HN]				
誇る	う	to be proud of/take pride in (neutral connotation)		-			
自慢する	E	to boast of (negative connotation)	[HN]	-			
激励する	E	to encourage/spur on/cheer on		-			
励ます	う	to encourage/cheer on/cheer up		-			
気合をかける	る	to cheer on/raise a shout to someone (に-marked)	(気合を掛ける)	気合を入れる	る	to fire/psych/motivate oneself up; to give it one's all	-
				努力する	E	to put in effort/exert/endeavour/strive	-
				無理する	E	to work/try too hard	
噛み殺す	う	to stifle (yawn/smile/laugh/etc.)		-			
笑いを噛み殺す	う	to stifle a laugh		-			
抑える	る	to restrain/control (emotions); to keep within limits (spending)		-			
遠慮する	E	to refrain from (esp. タバコ)		遠慮する	E	to hold back/reserve/constrain/restrain oneself	
配慮する	E	to be considerate/thoughtful of		配慮する	E	to have consideration/thoughtfulness for (に-marked)	
切望する	E	to earnestly desire/eagerly hope/long/yearn for (usu. progressive)		-			
-				絶望する	E	to despair/feel hopeless	
-				感動する	E	to be emotionally deeply moved/excited/inspired (internal emotions)	[goo]
-				感激する	E	to be emotionally deeply moved/impressed/inspired (stronger; with observable behavioural change)	[goo]
-				興奮する	E	to be excited/stimulated/agitated/aroused	
傷つける	る	to wound/injure/hurt someone's feelings		傷つく	う	to be wounded/injured/hurt (feelings)	
-				泣く	う	to cry	
-				泣ける	る	to shed tears/be moved to tears	
理解する	E	to sympathise	also in Table 132	-			
怒らす	う	to anger/offend/provoke	(esp. 怒らせる)	怒る	う	to get angry/lose one's temper; to scold/tell someone off	
-				ブチ切れる	る	to become enraged/lose it/flip out/blow one's top	slang
-				キレる	る	to snap/flip/get angry/lose one's temper	slang (切れる)
嫉妬する	E	to be jealous of (something)		嫉妬する	E	to be jealous (of (に-marked person))	
-				落ち着く	う	to calm down/compose oneself/relax; to settle down (location/job)	
-				びっくりする	E	to be surprised/frightened/startled	
脅かす	う	to startle/frighten/scare	also in Table 135	-			
大切にする	E	to cherish/treasure	also an adjective, adverb	-			

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
愛する	E	to love		-			
楽しむ	う	to enjoy/take pleasure in/have a good time/have fun (also used in wishes)		-			
楽しみにする	E	to look forward to		-			
-				ドキドキする	E	to beat fast (heart)/throb/pound/palpitate	also an adverb
-				ワクワクする	E	to be excited/thrilled/nervous	also an adverb

VD.5 Production

Table 127: Verbs: production.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
作る	う	to make/prepare (food)/grow (agriculture)/cultivate (people)	[goo]	-			
造る	う	to construct (large-scale buildings, manufacturing)	[goo]	-			
創る	う	to create/compose (artistic)/start a business	[goo]	-			
かける	る	to pour/splash/throw into (liquid); to sprinkle onto (powder/spice)	(掛ける)	-			
塩をかける	る	to salt/sprinkle salt on	(塩を掛ける)	-			
つける	る	to affix/attach/join/apply; to assign; to tail/watch	(付ける); also in Table 125	付く	つく	to come with/be provided/attached; to stain/scar/dye	
つなぐ	う	to connect/link together; to tie/chain/restrain	(繋ぐ); also in Table 129	つながる	う	to be tied/connected/linked/chained to; to be related to	(繋がる)
-				血がつながる	う	to be related by blood (usu. as progressive 血がつながっている)	(血が繋がる)
札をつける	る	to affix a label/tag	(札を付ける)	-			
加える	る	to add/include/sum (objects/people/concepts); to increase (heat/influence/speed)		加わる	う	to participate/be added to (objects/people/concepts); to increase (heat/influence/speed)	
付け加える	る	to add on/supplement/append		-			
足す	う	to add (arithmetic)	also: プラス[する]; [SE]	-			
引く	う	to subtract (arithmetic)	also: マイナスする; [SE]	-			
かける	る	to multiply (arithmetic)	(掛ける); [SE]	-			
割る	う	to divide (arithmetic)	[SE]	-			
始める	る	to start/begin/initiate	[HN]	始まる	う	to start/begin	[HN]
スタートする	E	to start/begin		スタートする	E	to start/begin	
開始する	E	to start/commence/begin/initiate	slightly formal; [HN]	開始する	E	to start/commence/begin/initiate	slightly formal; [HN]
-				出発する	E	to depart/leave/set off	
発動する	E	kick-start/put into effect (activity/feeling/machine/policy)		発動する	E	to kick-start into effect (activity/feeling/machine/policy)	
起動する	E	to startup/boot up/activate		起動する	E	to startup/boot up/activate	
準備する	E	to prepare/arrange/get ready/setup		-			
管理する	E	to manage/control (e.g. business)		-			
残す	う	to leave undone; to be left over/remain	also in Table 123	残る	う	to be left undone; to be left over/remaining	also in Table 123
続ける	る	to continue		続く	う	to continue	
<v stem>続ける	る	to continue <v stem>	AUX	-			
-				引き続く	う	to continue (for a long time); to come next (TV)	
やめる	る	to stop/end/quit/cancel/abandon/refrain	(止める)	止む	う	to stop/cease/be over	
辞める	る	to resign/retire/quit a job		-			
諦める	る	to give up/resign/abandon		-			
-				離れる	る	to quit/give up	also in Table 124
-				いい加減にする	E	to put an end to/get over with/quit something someone's been stuck doing	
<stem>止す	う	to stop in the midst of	SUFFIX	-			
終える	る	to finish	[HN]	終わる	う	to end/finish	[HN]
終了する	E	to end/close/terminate	slightly formal; [HN]	終了する	E	to end/close/terminate	slightly formal; [HN]
<v stem>終える	る	to finish <v stem>	AUX	-			
完成する	E	to complete/finish		-			
-				突破する	E	to break through/overcome; to exceed	
披露する	E	to announce/unveil/introduce; to boast		-			
-				引退する	E	to retire (from the workforce)	
登録する	E	to be entered into a register/to register/subscribe (YouTube)	[goo]	-			
-				入会する	E	to enrol/admit into a club/society/mailing list	[HN]
-				加入する	E	to join a group/project	[HN]
-				退会する	E	to withdraw/resign from a club/society/mailing list	
書く	う	to write		?			
描く	う	to draw/paint		?			
描く	う	to imagine; to depict (abstract concept)		?			
書き直す	う	to rewrite		-			
メモする	E	to note		-			
言う	う	to say; to name/call		-			
言い出す	う	to start saying		-			
言いさす	う	to stop saying midway	(言い止す)	-			
話す	う	to talk/speak		-			
-				ささやく	う	to whisper/murmur; to spread rumour (oft. passive progressive)	(囁く)
-				しゃべる	う	to chat/chatter/talk	(喋る)
呼ぶ	う	to call out to; to name/call; to summon (e.g. doctor)		-			
放送する	E	to broadcast/be on air (TV/radio)	[HN]	-			
配信する	E	to broadcast/stream (Internet)	[HN]	-			
-				雑談する	E	to chat/idle talk	
アドバイスする	E	to advise		-			
申し上げる	る	to say/express/offer/extend (greetings/congratulations/apologies, etc.)	humble, also in Table 129	-			
-				黙る	う	to be silent/say nothing	
歌う	う	to sing		歌う	う	to sing	
演奏する	E	to perform/play (music/instrument)		-			
叩く	う	to play (drum)	also in Table 123	-			
-				踊る	う	to dance (a hopping dance)	

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	**Cat.**	**Meaning**	**Notes**	**Action**	**Cat.**	**Meaning**	**Notes**
-				小躍りする	E	to dance for joy	
-				歩く	う	to walk	
-				ぶらぶらする	E	to walk leisurely/aimlessly	ONOMATOPOEIC, also an adverb
-				散歩する	E	to take a stroll	
-				走る	う	to run; drive (vehicle); flash (lightning); wind (road)	
-				走り出す	う	to start running/break into a run	
追う	う	to chase/run after/pursue		-			
追いかける	る	to chase/run after/pursue	(追い掛ける)				
追い込む	う	to corner/go hard/push/force someone into doing; to herd/drive/chase ("chase into")					
-				時間に追われる		to be pressed for time ("chased by time")	
-				追いつく	う	to catch up with (chase/relationships) ("chase and attach")	(追い付く)
-				泳ぐ	う	to swim/weave through a crowd	
-				混雑する	E	to be congested/crowded/jammed	[SE]
-				混む	う	to be crowded/packed/congested	[SE]
-				空く	う	to become less crowded/thin out; to get empty	also in Table 130
逃がす	う	to miss/fail to catch (more physical); to set free/let go/release (physical)	[goo]	逃げる	る	to flee/escape/get away/avoid (danger/responsibility)	
逃す	う	to miss/fail to catch (more abstract); to put out of reach (abstract)	[goo]	逃れる	る	to escape	
\<v stem\>逃す	う	to fail to \<v stem\>	AUX				
取り逃がす	う	to try and catch but fail	[goo]	-			
逸する	E	to miss/deviate from (abstract only; chance/right track)	[goo]	-			
避ける	る	to avoid (physical/situation/question/responsibility)		-			
取る	う	to take (notes/break/time)/obtain/pass/obtain		取れる	る	to come off (button/handle/lid)	
とる	う	to have/take/consume (a meal/vitamins)	(摂る)				
盗む	う	to steal/plagiarise		-			
手に入れる	る	to obtain/get/procure/win/secure		手に入る	う	to obtain/get one's hands on	
撮る	う	to take a photograph		撮れる	る	to be taken (photograph)	
録る	う	to record an audio or video		録れる	る	to be recorded/caught on tape (audio or video)	
捕る	う	to catch an object/capture an animal		捕れる	る	to be caught (object)/captured (animal)	
採る	う	to adopt (method/proposal); to collect/gather (flowers/plants)		採れる	る	to be collected/gathered (flowers/plants)	
摘む	う	to pick/pluck (flowers); to nip/snip/cut/trim		つまむ	う	to pick up (with chopsticks/tweezers)/pinch/hold	
もぐ	う	to pick/pluck by twisting from a tree		-			
集める	る	to collect/assemble/gather (collectibles/people/information)		集まる	う	to assemble/gather/collect	
計算する	E	to calculate/compute		-			
守る	う	to protect/guard/defend	also in Table 135	-			
面倒を見る	る	to look after (の-marked)		-			
切る	う	to cut/open (sealed); turn off (lights/appliance); hang up; (conversation); shuffle/discard (cards/tiles); punch (ticket)		切れる	る	to break/snap; run out/stop working/expire; be disconnected; be shuffled (cards/tiles); run out (stock); break up	
\<v stem\>切る	う	to be able to do \<v stem\> completely	AUX				
破る	う	to tear/rip (paper/cloth); to break through (defences); to surpass (record)	[HN] also in Table 135	破れる	る	to break/collapse/be torn/worn out/ruined	
壊す	う	to break/destroy/demolish; to wreck/ruin/spoil/damage/destroy (e.g. dreams)	[HN]	壊れる	る	to break/fall apart/collapse/be broken/destroyed/damaged; to stop working	
-				もげる	る	to be torn off/come off	
直す	う	to repair/correct (mistake/habit)/restore/tidy up (hair/make-up)/fix		直る	う	to return to normal/be restored/repaired/improved/corrected	
治す	う	to cure/heal		治る	う	to recover/be cured/healed	
\<v stem\>直す	う	to redo \<v stem\>	-				
世話する	E	to care/look after; to put up a good word for/recommend/introduce		-			
温める	る	to warm/heat up moderately	(also 暖める); [goo]	温まる	う	to warm oneself up	
熱する	E	to heat to high temperature; to get excited/fired up	[goo]	-			
冷やす	う	to cool from room temperature/chill/refrigerate (any object); to calm down/regain composure/relax	[goo], [HN2]	冷える	る	to be cooled (more than usual/purposefully from room temperature) (any subject)	[HN1], [HN2]
冷ます	う	to cool from high temperature to room temperature (of liquid/food/heat); to dampen (feelings/atmosphere/interest)	[goo], [HN2]	冷める	る	to cool down/become cold (naturally) (liquid/food/heat)	[HN1], [HN2]
洗う	う	to wash/cleanse/rinse		-			
掃除する	E	to clean/sweep/dust/scrub	[goo]	-			
清掃する	E	to clean/clean-up/garbage collect	literary: [goo]	-			
掃く	う	to sweep/brush/clean		-			
払う	う	to brush/dust/wipe off (e.g. dust/dirt)	also in Table 128	-			
-				求婚する	E	to propose (marriage)	
-				結婚する	E	to get/be married	
-				咲く	う	to bloom/flower/blossom	
-				満開する	E	to be in full bloom (esp. of cherry blossom)	

VD.6 Consumption

Table 128: Verbs: consumption.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	**Cat.**	**Meaning**	**Notes**	**Action**	**Cat.**	**Meaning**	**Notes**
使う	う	to use (something/person/idea/means/method)	[goo]	-			
用いる	る	to use (slightly abstract); to evaluate and use (person); to adopt (idea)	[goo]	-			
かける	る	to spend/expend/use (time/money)	(掛ける)	かかる	う	to take/require (time/money)	(掛かる)
時間をかける	る	to spend time (on doing something)	(時間を掛ける)	時間がかかる	う	to take/require time	(時間が掛かる)
請求する	E	to charge/bill (for a service)	also in Table 129	-			

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
払う	う	to pay (money/bill)	also in Table 127	-			
遊ばす	う	to leave idle (resources)		-			
遊ばせる	る	to leave idle (resources)		-			
-				寝る	る	to lie idle (resources)	also in Table 130
-				睡る	う	to lie idle (resources)	also in Table 130
-				なくなる	う	to run out/be reduced to zero/not occur anymore	(無くなる); also in Table 133
見る	る	to see/observe		見える	る	to be seen/visible	also in Table 124
ちらっと見る	る	to glimpse/glance at		-			
<v te>みる	る	to try <v te> and see (what happens)	AUX	-			
試みる	う	to attempt/try and see if it's possible	[goo]	-			
試す	う	to attempt/put to the test and confirm truth/goodness	[goo]	-			
見つける	る	to find/discover/detect		見つかる	う	to be found/discovered	
バラす	う	to expose/disclose/leak a secret	colloquial	バレる	る	to be exposed/found out/leak a secret	
実験する	う	to experiment	[goo]	-			
読む	う	to read/recite/pronounce/decipher		-			
読み出す	う	to read out (computing)		-			
読みさす	う	to leave half-read	(読み止す)	-			
聞く	う	to hear		聞こえる	る	to be heard/audible	
聴く	う	to listen attentively (music)		?			
吸う	う	to smoke (cigarettes); to breathe in/inhale; to soak up/absorb (sponge); to kiss		-			
タバコを吸う	う	to smoke a cigarette		-			
吸い込む	う	to inhale/breathe in; to soak up/absorb (sponge); to suck in (allure)		-			
-				キスする	E	to kiss (に-marked)	
-				チュッする	E	to lightly kiss/smooch	slang, ONOMATOPOEIC
-				チューする	E	to kiss	slang, ONOMATOPOEIC
食べる	る	to eat		-			
食う	う	to eat (masculine); to bite/sting (insects); to consume (resources)	also in Table 135	-			
刺す	う	to sting/bite (insects)	also in Table 123	-			
食べすぎる	る	to overeat		-			
味わう	う	to taste/experience/savour/relish (literal/abstract (e.g. victory))		-			
-				<adj>味がする	E	to taste like/of	
テイクアウトする	E	to take-out/takeaway food		-			
持ち帰る	う	to take home/take out (food)	(通る/行る); slang	-			
摂取する	E	to intake/ingest (salt/sugar/pills/food); to absorb/assimilate (knowledge/culture)		-			
飲む	う	to drink/swallow/take medicine		-			
呑む	う	to gulp/swallow whole		-			
-				乾杯する	E	to toast/drink/drink one's glass dry (in honour of/celebration)	
つける	る	to turn on/switch on/light up (appliance/fire)	(点ける)	つく	う	to come on/ignite/be turned on/lit (appliance/fire)	(点く)
消す	う	to erase/delete/rid; turn off/extinguish (appliance/fire)		消える	る	to disappear/vanish; go out/be turned off/extinguished (appliance/fire)	
-				なくなる	う	to disappear (e.g. pain/dream)	(無くなる); also in Table 133
削除する	E	to delete/erase/eliminate		-			
遊ぶ	う	to play		-			
遊ばす	う	to let someone play; to entertain/amuse someone		-			
遊ばせる	る	to let someone play; to entertain/amuse someone		-			
-				ふざける	る	to joke/make fun of	
買う	う	to buy		-			
ロックする	E	to lock		-			
かける	る	to secure (lock)	(掛ける)	かかる	う	to be fastened (lock)	(掛かる)
鍵をかける	る	to lock up (e.g. door)	(鍵を掛ける)	鍵がかかる	う	to become locked/be locked	(鍵が掛かる)

VD.7 Interaction

Table 129: Verbs: interaction.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				ある	う	to exist/have (inanimate)	(有る)
-				いる	る	to exist (animate)	(居る)
-				<v te>ている	る	progressive state of action/being	(居る); AUX
-				<adj/v stem>すぎる	る	to be excessive/too much	(過ぎる); SUFFIX
?				する	E	to do	
?				{お/ご}<nn>申し上げる	る	to do	AUX humble, also in Table 127
?				<nn>にする	E	to decide on (e.g. ordering from menu)	
?				<adj>にする	E	to make become	
?				<v>ことにする	E	to decide to <v>	
?				<v>ことにしている	E	to decide to make it a rule/practice to <v>	
?				<v>ようにする	E	to try to make sure that <v>	
やる	う	to do/play/send/put; to give (to animal)	(遣る/行る); slang	-			
やってみる	る	to have a go/try and do	(やって見る)	やってみる	る	to take a chance with something	(やって見る)
?				ゴリ押しする	E	to do/push through by force	
捧げる	る	to dedicate/offer/devote/sacrifice		-				% technically there is a 捧ぐ but I think

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
							nobody really uses that so...
しまう	う	to finish/stop/close/shut down/put away	(仕舞う)	-			
<v te>しまう	う	to do completely	(仕舞う); AUX	-			
<v te>しまう	う	to do accidentally	(仕舞う); AUX	-			
{<vtf>ちゃう <vtf>じゃう}	う	to do completely	AUX	-			
{<vtf>ちゃう <vtf>じゃう}	う	to do accidentally	AUX	-			
-				なる	う	to become/get/attain/reach/turn into/be completed	usu. 「〜になる」
?				ご<noun>になる	う	to do <noun>	AUX, honorific
?				お<v stem>になる	う	to do <v stem>	AUX, honorific
?				<v>ことになる	う	to arrange/decide so that <v>	
?				<v>ようになる	う	to come to be that/start to <v> (focus on change state)	
?				よくなる	う	to become better/improve	(良くなる)
置く	う	to leave behind/put/place		-			
<v te>ておく	う	to do <v te> in advance in preparation for something		-			
選ぶ	う	to choose/select		-			
優先する	E	to precede/take priority/be preferred		優先する	E	to take precedence/priority over others	
-				間に合う	う	to be good enough/make do	also in Table 134
				いる	る	to need/want	(要る)
お願いする	E	to request/ask for a favour/wish	polite	-			
頼む	う	to request/ask/beg; to entrust to; to rely on		-			
請求する	E	to request/apply for; to demand/claim (e.g. luggage, damages)	also in Table 128	-			
任せる	る	to entrust/leave to someone (に-suffixed)	[HN]	-			
命令する	E	to order/command					
-				<nn>に関する	E	concerning/relating/regarding <nn>	
-				関係する	E	to be related/connected to (human relationships); to participate in/be involved/concerned with	
-				関連する	E	to be related/connected to (abstract/general)	
-				会う	う	to meet/encounter	
-				逢う	う	to meet/encounter (close friends/romantic)	[HN]
-				遭う	う	to have an undesired meeting/experience/accident	
-				できる	る	to come into existence; to make/get friend/partner	(出来る); also in Table 131
誘う	う	to invite; to ask someone to do/take someone along to (に-marked)		-			
おごる	う	to treat someone to something (e.g. a meal/drink)	(奢る)	-			
-				答える	る	to answer/reply	
-				返事する	E	to reply/answer/response	
待つ	う	to wait		待つ	う	to wait	
楽しみに待つ	う	to wait expectantly/in anticipation		楽しみに待つ	う	to wait expectantly/in anticipation	
一緒にする	E	to do together/unite/mix		-			
[<with list>と]一緒になる	う	to rendezvous/join/meet together/get married with	htc				
-				目立つ	う	to stand out/be conspicuous	
-				変わった	る	to be unusual/abnormal/strange/odd/peculiar/weird/different	
-				変わっている	る	to be unusual/uncommon/peculiar/eccentric/different	sometimes derogatory
送る	う	to send/dispatch/forward/transmit/ship/remit/pass; to see someone off/bid farewell; to affix (送り仮名)		-			
贈る	う	to gift (a present)		-			
送り出す	う	to send out/forward; to show a person out		-			
受ける	る	to receive/get; to be struck by (e.g. winds/waves/sunlight)		-			
いただく	う	to receive/accept/take/eat/drink	(頂く); humble	いただける	る	to be able to receive/accept/eat/drink	humble
<v te>いただく	う	to receive (humble of もらう)	humble	-			
ウケる	る	to be well-received/become popular		-			
手伝う	う	to help/assist/aid; to contribute to		-			
助ける	る	to save/rescue/spare/help		助かる	う	to be saved/rescued/escape harm/survive/helped	
救う	う	to save/rescue from/help out of		-			
応援する	E	to aid/assist/help/support; to cheer/root for		-			
感謝する	E	to thank		感謝する	E	to be grateful/thankful	
大感謝する	E	to greatly thank		大感謝する	E	to be greatly grateful/thankful	
評価する	E	to appreciate/recognise/acknowledge/praise	also in Table 131	-			
?				(ご)注意する	E	to pay attention/remind/caution	
				All WOSURU family			
連絡する	E	to make contact/communicate/call/message		-			
?				電話する	E	to call (phone call)	
かける	る	to make (a call)	(掛ける)	かかる	う	to get/receive (a call)	(掛かる)
電話をかける	る	to telephone/make a call	(電話を掛ける)	電話がかかる	う	to get/receive (a call)	(電話を掛かる)
つなぐ	う	to transfer phone call/connect with (に-marked)	also in Table 127				
告白する	E	to confess to a crime/wrongdoing	[goo]	告白する	E	to confess one's romantic feelings	
自白する	E	to confess/admit (when questioned)	[goo]	-			
自供する	E	to confess (when questioned)	[goo]	-			
逮捕する	E	to arrest/capture		-			
ノートする	E	to note down		-			
				粘る	う	to be sticky/adhesive	

VD.8 Health

Table 130: Verbs: health.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				空く	う	to be hungry	also in Table 127
-				渇く	う	to be thirsty; to thirst/crave for (〜に渇いた)	
汗をかく	う	to perspire/sweat	(汗を掻く)	-			
-				疲れる	る	to become tired/fatigued/exhausted (physical/mental); to become worn out (object overuse)	[goo]
-				疲労する	E	to be fatigued/exhausted/tired	
-				くたびれる	る	to become tired/exhausted/weary (physical); to become worn out (object overuse)	(草臥れる); [goo]
-				バテる	る	to be exhausted	slang
-				病気になる	う	to fall ill/sick	
かく	う	to scratch (e.g. mosquito bite); to perspire	(掻く)	-			
-				寝る	る	to lie down/go to bed/sleep	also in Table 128; [goo]
-				眠る	う	to sleep; to rest in peace (euphemism)	also in Table 128; [goo]
-				休む	う	to take a day off/be absent; to rest/have a break	
傷つける	る	to wound/injure/hurt someone's feelings	(傷付ける)	傷つく	う	to be wounded/get injured/get hurt feelings	(傷付く)
痛める	る	to hurt/injure/cause pain		痛む	う	to hurt/ache/feel a pain	
傷める	る	to harm/damage; to spoil		傷む	う	to be injured/damaged; to be spoiled (food)	
生む	う	to give birth/bear (a child)/lay (eggs); to produce/yield (e.g. interest/returns)		生まれる	る	to be born	
生かす?				生きる	る	to live/come to life/make a living	
生じる	*	a lot!					
生み出す	*	a lot!					
				死ぬ	う	to die/pass away	

VD.9 Ability

Table 131: Verbs: ability.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				あり得る	る	to be possible/conceivable/likely/probable	
-				できる	る	to be able to do	(出来る); also in Table 129
料理する	E	to deal with skilfully/handle well		-			
-				イケる	る	to look/taste good; to be good at (esp. food); to go well	
-				独立する	E	to be independent/self-reliant	
-				苦労する	E	to have trouble/difficulty	
評価する	E	to rate/appraise/evaluate/assess	also in Table 129	-			
-				成功する	E	to succeed	
-				失敗する	E	to fail	
-				受かる	う	to pass an exam	

VD.10 Education and correctness

MATH

Table 132: Verbs: education and correctness.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
訊く	う	to ask/enquire		?			
質問する	E	to ask a question		質問[を]する	E	to ask a question	
教える	る	to teach/inform		-			
教わる	う	to be taught/learn/take lessons in		-			
説明する	E	to explain/describe		-			
習う	う	to take lessons/learn/be trained (under a teacher)		-			
練習する	E	to practise/train/drill		-			
勉強する	E	to study		勉強する	E	to work hard	
自習する	E	to self-study		-			
-				頑張る	う	to persevere/keep at it/hang on/do one's best	
-				わかる	う	to understand/comprehend	also an interjection
了解する	E	to understand/agree		-			
理解する	E	to understand	also in Table 126	-			
違える	る	to make a mistake	[HN]	違う	う	to differ/be different; to be wrong/mistaken	
間違える	る	to make a mistake in/commit an error/do incorrectly		間違う	う	to be mistaken/incorrect/wrong (oft. as past/progressive)	
-				異なる	う	to differ/disagree/vary/diverge (of opinions)	
誤解する	E	to have a misunderstanding about		誤解する	E	to have a misunderstanding	[goo]
-				勘違いする	E	to erroneously assume/live in an illusion/be mistaken	[goo]
-				思い違いする	E	to be mistaken/have a misconception	[goo]

VD.11 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 133: Verbs: knowledge, truth and reality.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
思う	う	to think/believe/judge/imagine/recall/feel		-			
考える	る	to consider/think over/reflect on		-			

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
承知する	E	to know/be aware; to accept/consent/comply/acknowledge		-			
信じる	る	to believe/trust/have faith in		-			
信用する	E	to trust (information/source; past)	[SE]	-			
信頼する	E	to trust (a person/organisation; future)	[SE]	-			
疑う	う	to doubt/distrust/be suspicious of		-			
-				はっきりする	E	to clear (e.g. fog/confusion); to be clear/definite (sight/knowledge)	
隠す	う	to hide/conceal		隠れる	る	to hide/conceal oneself/take cover; to be hidden by/disappear behind; to be unknown/undiscovered	
隠し事する	E	to keep a secret		-			
伏せる	る	to conceal (secret)/place in hiding (in ambush)	also in Table 123	-			
隠蔽する	E	to cover up/conceal/hide/suppress		-			
-				なくなる	う	to be lost/missing	(無くなる); also in Table 128
-				気づく	う	to notice/realise/sense (internal/somehow nuance)	(気付く); [HN]
-				気がつく	う	to notice/realise/sense; regain consciousness	(気が付く); [HN]
知る	う	to know/be familiar with		知れる	る	to be known/understood/discovered	
覚える	る	to remember/memorise/learn by heart		-			
思い出す	う	to recall/remember/recollect		-			
意識する	E	to become aware of		-			
忘れる	る	to forget		-			
-				由来する	E	to originate from (に-marked)	
調べる	る	to look up/search/investigate/examine		-			
観察する	E	to observe/survey/watch		-			
探す	う	to search/look/hunt for (something desired)		-			
捜す	う	to search/look/hunt for (something lost)		-			
探索する	E	to hunt/explore/investigate/search/lookup		-			
分析する	E	to analyse		-			
推す	う	to infer/deduce/gather/conjecture/surmise from	also in Table 135	-			
報告する	E	to report (information)		-			
証明する	E	to prove/testify		-			
確認する	E	to confirm/verify/validate/check		-			
発見する	E	to discover/detect/find		-			
発明する	E	to invent		-			
決断する	E	to decide (strong)	[goo]	-			
決定する	E	to decide	[goo]	-			
判断する	E	to judge	[goo]	-			
判定する	E	to make a verdict/ruling (of judges/referees)	[goo]	-			
断定する	E	to assert/declare/conclude	[goo]	-			
内定する	E	to unofficially decide/offer (e.g. job)		内定する	E	to unofficially decide/offer (e.g. job)	
探る	う	to feel around/grope/search/find for; to investigate/probe/spy/sound out; to explore (parts unknown)		-			

VD.12 Courtesy

<div align="center">Table 134: Verbs: courtesy.</div>

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
無視する	E	to disregard/ignore		-			
-				間に合う	う	to be/make it in time for	also in Table 129
遅らす	う	to delay/postpone/slow down/retard		遅れる	る	to be late/delayed/overdue/slow	
-				後れる	る	to fall behind others (race/studies)	
進める	る	to set a clock forwards in time	also in Table 124	進む	う	to be fast (of a clock)	also in Table 124
かける	る	to cause/burden/impose (inconvenience/trouble)	(掛ける)	-			
迷惑をかける	る	to annoy/inconvenience/trouble/cause trouble	(迷惑を掛ける)	-			
面倒をかける	る	to inconvenience/trouble	(面倒を掛ける)	-			

VD.13 Conflict and resolution

<div align="center">Table 135: Verbs: conflict and resolution.</div>

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes	Action	Cat.	Meaning	Notes
-				争う	う	to compete/contest/contend	
-				勝つ	う	to win (personal)	
-				勝利する	E	to win (larger scale)	
攻める	る	to attack/assault/assail		-			
-				抗う	う	to fight against/resist/oppose	
倒す	う	to kill/defeat/beat/overthrow	also in Table 124	倒れる	る	to be killed (person)/fall (organisation)	also in Table 124; [HN]
負かす	う	to defeat	[HN]	負ける	る	to lose (personal)/succumb to/give in to	
敗る	う	to defeat/beat	[HN]	敗れる	る	to lose/be defeated/beaten/unsuccessful	
-				敗北する	E	to lose (larger scale)	
食う	う	to outdo/defeat	also in Table 128	-			
全滅する	E	to completely destroy/annihilate/wipe out		全滅する	E	to be totally defeated/completely fail	
騙す	う	to trick/cheat/deceive		-			
馬鹿にする	E	to make fun of/look down on/make light of		-			
後出しする	E	to wait to see one's opponent's move before making your move (disallowed in games); to hold back until the last minute		-			

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	**Cat.**	**Meaning**	**Notes**	**Action**	**Cat.**	**Meaning**	**Notes**
誤る	う	to err/make a mistake in; to mislead/misguide/lead astray		誤る	う	to be mistaken/wrong/incorrect	
-				喧嘩する	E	to quarrel/brawl/fight/squabble/scuffle/argue	
脅す	う	to threaten/menace	[goo]	-			
脅かす	う	to threaten/menace	[goo] also in Table 126	-			
責める	る	to blame/condemn/critise/reproach		-			
謝る	う	to apologise		-			
謝罪する	E	to apologise		-			
勘弁する	E	to pardon/forgive; to give someone a break		-			
許す	う	to allow/approve; forgive/excuse		-			
-				構う	う	to mind/care about/be concerned about/have a regard for (に-marked)	
気にする	E	(negative nuance) to mind/care/worry about something		気にする	E	(negative nuance) to mind/care/worry about something	
-				賛成する	E	to approve of/agree with/support (に-marked)	
推す	う	to recommend/endorse/nominate/support/back	also in Table 133	-			
拒む	う	to refuse/decline		-			
-				お断りします	E	I decline/refuse/reject/do not accept	polite
-				気をつける	る	to be careful of/pay attention to/take care of (に-marked)	(気を付ける)
警戒する	E	to be cautious of/be on guard against		反対する	E	to object/oppose/disagree with/resist (に-marked)	
禁じる/禁ず[る]	る	to forbid/ban/prohibit	some zuru verb black magic	-			
ブロックする	E	to block (user/website); to obstruct		-			
バンする	E	to ban (an online account)	slang	-			
約束する	E	to promise/make an agreement		-			
守る	う	to keep/uphold/abide by/follow (promise/rules)	also in Table 127	-			
破る	う	to break/violate (silence/promise/rules)	also in Table 127	-			
捕まえる	る	to arrest/catch/capture/seize/restrain		-			
尋問する	E	to interrogate/question		-			
罰する	E	to punish/penalise		-			
殺す	う	to kill; to suppress/destroy/stifle (talent/feelings/yawn/laugh)		-			
ぶち殺す	う	to beat to death; to kill (emphatic)		-			
-				自殺する	E	to suicide	

VD.14 Change

Table 136: Verbs: change.

Transitive				Intransitive			
Action	**Cat.**	**Meaning**	**Notes**	**Action**	**Cat.**	**Meaning**	**Notes**
-				変化する	E	to change/vary/mutate/transition/transform/be altered/transfigured; inflect/conjugate (grammar)	
-				進化する	E	to evolve/advance/progress/develop/improve	
展開する	E	to develop/evolve/progress/unfold/plot twist; to expand (physical/mathematical)		展開する	E	to develop/evolve/progress/unfold/plot twist; to expand (physical/mathematical)	
修正する	E	to amend/correct/revise/modify/alter/retouch/update/fix		-			
変える	る	to alter/transform/convert/vary/change		変わる	う	to transform/change; to move to (new place)	
換える	る	to exchange		換わる	る	to switch/be exchanged/change places	
替える	る	to replace		替わる	る	to relieve/replace	
代える	る	to substitute		代わる	る	to substitute/hand over (telephone)	
切り変える	る	to alter/transform/convert/vary/change		-			
切り替える	る	to replace		-			
切り換える	る	to exchange		-			
取り替える	る	to replace (widest usage; "take and replace")	[goo]	-			
入れ替える	る	to replace (only interior contents; "enter and replace")	[goo]	-			
付け替える	る	to replace (can replace to different location; "(re)attach and replace")	[goo]	-			
入れ換える	る	to exchange		-			
-				声変する	E	to break voice	
-				痩せる	る	to lose weight/become thin; to become impoverished/infertile/barren (soil)	
-				太る	う	to put on weight/grow fat	
-				禿げる	る	to lose hair/become bald	
-				紅葉する	E	to turn red (of leaves, in autumn)	
-				黄葉する	E	to turn yellow (of leaves, in autumn)	

SUFFIXES AND AUXES

VE 副詞と接続詞 (adverbs and conjunctions)

VE.1 Grammatical

Table 137: Verbs: grammatical.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
例えば	for example/for instance	
つまり	in short/in other words	(詰まり)
まず	firstly	(先ず)
取りあえず	first of all/right away	also in Tables Table 140, Table 145
次いで	secondly/next/subsequently	also a CONJUNCTION
{C だから E {}[C ですから E]}	therefore (to speaker, E is a natural consequence of C; strong expression of speaker's attitude)	{CONJUNCTION also an expression; [MCJ] {}[polite]}
C それで E	(objective そ) therefore (general cause-and-effect; E must have certainly happened (either past or now))	CONJUNCTION [goo], [MCJ]
C そこで E	(objective そ) therefore (C is problem/situation, E is action taken to solve/improve/advance)	CONJUNCTION [goo], [MCJ]
C すると E	thereupon (E happens *immediately* after C)	CONJUNCTION [MCJ]
だからこそ	for this very reason/this is exactly why	technically an expression
しかし	however/but	CONJUNCTION
但	only/merely/just/simply; but/however/nonetheless	also an noun
ただし	but/however/provided that	(但し)
ために	for the sake of; because of/as a result of	(為に); CONJUNCTION
ちなみに	by the way/incidentally/in passing	(因みに)
っていう	meaning/called/said	(って言う) slang of という
<that>わけではない	it does not mean that/I don't mean that	(訳ではない); technically an expression
<that>わけじゃない	it does not mean that/I don't mean that	(訳じゃない); technically an expression
もし	if/in case/supposing	(若し)
そして	and/and then/thus/and now/and finally	CONJUNCTION

VE.2 Directions

Table 138: Verbs: directions.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
まっすぐ	straight (ahead)/directly (destination)/uprightly/erectly	(真っ直ぐ)

VE.3 Intensity modifiers

Table 139: Verbs: intensity modifiers.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
全然<negative>	not at all	
とても<negative>	not at all/simply cannot	
あまり<negative>	not very	(余り); slightly formal [HN1], [HN2]
別に<negative>	not particularly (nuance: not interested)	slightly informal, can be rude; [HN1], [HN2]
少し	somewhat/slightly/a little	

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ちょっと	a bit/slightly/somewhat/quite; just a minute	
一歩	small degree/small amount (one step)	
かなり	quite/considerably/pretty	
なかなか	very/considerably/fairly/quite/rather	(中々)
相当	considerably/rather/quite/fairly/pretty	also an adjective, verb
そこそこ	reasonably/fairly/all right/moderate	ONOMATOPOEIC, also in Table 148
いい加減	considerably/quite/rather/pretty enough (wanting something to end)	also an adjective
大〜	large/big/great/severe	PREFIX. htc; technically な-adj/noun
すごく	very/immensely/awfully	(凄く)
全く	really/truly/entirely/completely/perfectly; indeed	also a noun
随分	surprisingly/very/extremely/fairly/quite/considerably/awfully/terribly	
大変	very/greatly/terribly/awfully	also an adjective
そりゃ	very/extremely	
とても	very/exceedingly/awfully	
めっちゃ	extremely/very/really/super/so	slang
めちゃくちゃ	incredibly/really/super/so	also an adjective
特別	especially/particularly/extraordinarily/exceptionally	also an adjective
全然	extremely/very	e.g. 「全然いいよ」
一部	partly/partially	
全部	entirely/wholly/altogether	also a noun; [goo]
全体	wholly/entirely	[goo]
すべて	entirely/completely/wholly	(全て)
たくさん	a lot/lots/plenty/much/a great deal; enough/too much	(沢山); also an adjective
いっぱい	fully/as much as possible; a lot/many; all of	(一杯); also a noun and adjective
たっぷり	plentifully/with excess/amply/abundantly/copiously/generously/fully/a lot	ONOMATOPOEIC
一番	best/most	
わざと	purposely/deliberately/intentionally	
偶然	coincidentally/by chance/unexpectedly/accidentally	also a noun
もしや	possibly/perhaps/by some chance	(若しや)
もしかし	maybe/perhaps/by some chance	(若しかし)
もしかして	perhaps/possibly/maybe/by any chance/if I'm not mistaken	(若ししかして)
確か	if I'm not mistaken/if I remember correctly	also a noun
多分	probably/perhaps	
まず	probably/most likely/almost certainly	(先ず)
確かに	certainly/for sure/indeed/really	
一体	(what) the heck/(why) in the world/(who) on earth (emphatic question prefix)	

VE.4 Time

Table 140: Verbs: time.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
一瞬	momentarily/for an instant	
1日中	all day long/throughout the day	note 中
末永く	everlastingly/forever/for many years to come	
いつまでも	eternally/indefinitely/endlessly/forever/for a long time	(何時までも)
急に	suddenly/abruptly/unexpectedly; swiftly/rapidly/quickly/ hastily/hurriedly; sharply/steeply (slope/bend)	
すぐ	immediately/at once/right away; soon; easily; right near/ nearby	(直ぐ)
すぐに	immediately/at once/right away/instantly	(直ぐに)
今すぐ	immediately/at once/right now	(今直ぐ)
さっさと	immediately/without delay/hurriedly/quickly	
早く	early/soon/quickly/swiftly/rapidly	
そろそろ	soon/it's about time/any time now (expresses impatience)	
遅く	late/slowly	
ゆっくり	slowly/unhurriedly/without haste/leisurely	ONOMATOPOEIC
だんだん	gradually/little by little/more and more/increasingly	(段々)
まだ	not yet/still	(未だ)
もう	already; not any more/longer; again/another	again/another: used with counting 1
ようやく	finally/at last	
今更	now/at this stage (when it is already much too late)	
ちらっと	at a glance/by accident	ONOMATOPOEIC
本来	originally/primarily	
もともと	originally/from the start/from the onset	(元々)
先に	previously/before/earlier/formerly/recently; beforehand/in advance	
今のところ	at present/currently/so far/for now/for the time being	
今のとこ	at present/currently/so far/for now/for the time being	slang, abbreviation
取りあえず	tentatively/for now/for the time being	also in Tables Table 137, Table 145
長い間	for quite some time/a long time	also a noun
ずっと	the whole time/continuously; much (more); (by) far	
引き続き	continuously/continually/continued/without a break	
よく	frequently/often	(良く); also in Table 141
いつも	always	(何時も)
これから	from now on/in the future; from here	also a noun

VE.5 Attitude

Table 141: Verbs: attitude.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ぶらぶら	(walking) leisurely/aimlessly	ONOMATOPOEIC, also a verb
遠慮なく	without reservation/freely	
静かに	calmly/quietly/gently/peacefully	also an expression
ちゃんと	diligently/seriously/earnestly; properly/perfectly/exactly/ regularly; quickly	ONOMATOPOEIC
しっかり	properly/well/sufficiently/hard/fully (working)	also in Table 148

ジャッキー・カン
kung.jwe@gmail.com   250407 160201 (GMT)

<ruby>日本語学習教材<rt>にほんごがくしゅうきょうざい</rt></ruby>

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
はっきり	clearly/plainly (clarity in sight/knowledge) (usu. はっきりした)	also a verb
<ruby>大切<rt>たいせつ</rt></ruby>に	carefully/with great care	also an adjective, verb
<ruby>詳<rt>くわ</rt></ruby>しく	in detail/fully/at length	
よろしく	properly/well/suitably; please do	(<ruby>宜<rt>よろ</rt></ruby>しく)
４６４９	properly/well/suitably; please do	(<ruby>宜<rt>よろ</rt></ruby>しく); slang
<…>よろしく	just like/as though one were <…>	(<ruby>宜<rt>よろ</rt></ruby>しく)
よく	nicely/properly/well/skilfully	(<ruby>良<rt>よ</rt></ruby>く); also in Table 140
<ruby>絶対<rt>ぜったい</rt></ruby>	absolutely/definitely/unconditionally	
よろしく<…>べし	by all means/of course do <…>	(<ruby>宜<rt>よろ</rt></ruby>しく)
お<ruby>腹<rt>なか</rt></ruby>いっぱい	to one's heart's content	also a noun
<ruby>普通<rt>ふつう</rt></ruby>に	normally/ordinarily/usually/generally/commonly	
<ruby>通常<rt>つうじょう</rt></ruby>	usually/ordinarily/normally/regularly/generally/commonly	also a noun
<ruby>普段<rt>ふだん</rt></ruby>	usually/normally/generally/habitually/always	also a noun
<ruby>大体<rt>だいたい</rt></ruby>	generally/on the whole/mostly/almost/nearly/approximately/roughly/about	
ほとんど	almost/nearly/mostly/practically/virtually/basically/just about	(<ruby>殆<rt>ほとん</rt></ruby>ど), also in Table 121
<ruby>本当<rt>ほんとう</rt></ruby>に/<ruby>本当<rt>ほんと</rt></ruby>に	really/truly	
<ruby>正直<rt>しょうじき</rt></ruby>	honestly/frankly	also an adjective
<ruby>別<rt>べつ</rt></ruby>に	separately/additionally/extra	
ツンツン	aloof/cold/unfriendly/standoffish	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb; also in Table 147
デレデレ	flirting/philandering/being lovestruck/fawning	ONOMATOPOEIC

VE.6 Emotions

Table 142: Verbs: emotions.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
<ruby>喜<rt>よろこ</rt></ruby>んで	with pleasure/gladly/willingly/certainly	
ドキドキ	thump-thump/bang-bang/pit-a-pat/pitter-patter	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb
ワクワク	to be excited/thrilled/nervous	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb
キュン	with a pitter-patter/heart-wringing/tightening of one's chest caused by powerful feelings (e.g. parting);「<ruby>胸<rt>むね</rt></ruby>がキュンとなる」	ONOMATOPOEIC
ムカムカ	feeling sick/queasy/nauseated/disgusted	also a verb
ソワソワ	restlessly/nervously/uneasily/in a fidget	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb
ニヤニヤ	grinningly/smirkingly	ONOMATOPOEIC also a verb
<ruby>残念<rt>ざんねん</rt></ruby>ながら	unfortunately/regrettably	technically an expression

VE.7 Appearance and style

Table 143: Verbs: appearance and style.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
こう	in this way (closer to speaker)	
そう	in that way (closer to listener)	also an interjection
ああ	in that way (distant)	
こんあふうに	approximately in this way (closer to speaker)	(こんな<ruby>風<rt>ふう</rt></ruby>に)

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
そんあふうに	approximately in that way (closer to listener)	(そんな風に)
あんあふうに	approximately in that way (distant)	(あんな風に)
キラキラ	glittering/sparkling/glistening/twinkling	ONOMATOPOEIC
ぴょんぴょん	hopping/skipping/lightly and repeatedly jumping	ONOMATOPOEIC
チュッ	with a smooch/light smacking sound	ONOMATOPOEIC
プチュッ	kissing loudly/smooching; squirting/gushing	ONOMATOPOEIC
ちょこちょこ	with small quick steps/toddling	ONOMATOPOEIC
むにゃむにゃ	mumbling incomprehensibly/mutteringly/murmuringly	ONOMATOPOEIC

VE.8 Interaction

Table 144: Verbs: interaction.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
久しぶりに	for the first time in a while/after a long time	
一緒	together/at the same time; identical	
<with>と一緒に<verb>	together with	
どうか	please/if you would/would you mind (sentence starter)	polite; also a pronoun
どうぞ	please/by all means/certainly/of course/go ahead/feel free to; here you are (passing something)	
是非	certainly/without fail/by all means	
ぜひぜひ	certainly/by all means	(是非是非)
必ず	necessarily/certainly/without fail	

VE.9 Knowledge, truth and reality

Table 145: Verbs: knowledge, truth and reality.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
実は	to be honest/frankly/to tell you the truth	
実際は	in fact/actually/in reality/to tell the truth (as opposed to expectation)	
実際に	actually/really/truly/in practice (as opposed to expectation)	
やはり	as expected/sure enough; in any case/after all/in the end	
やっぱり	as expected/sure enough; in any case/after all/in the end	
当然	naturally/rightly/deservedly/justly	also an adjective
さすが	just as you'd expect from	(流石)
さすがに	as one would expect/naturally/indeed	(流石に)
もちろん	of course/certainly/naturally/definitely	(勿論)
とにかく	anyway/in any case	(兎に角)
取りあえず	anyway	also in Tables Table 137, Table 140

VE.10 Ability

Table 146: Verbs: ability.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ペラペラ	fluently (speaking a foreign language)	also an adjective

VE.11 Taste and texture

Table 147: Verbs: taste and texture.

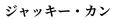| Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ペロペロ	licking/lapping up; gobbling up	
ふわふわ	lightly/buoyantly	ONOMATOPOEIC, also an adjective
とろり	thickly/viscously/stickily/creamily	ONOMATOPOEIC
どろり	thick/muddy/gooey (of liquid)	ONOMATOPOEIC
ぷにぷに	squishy/springy/bouncy (chubby when used on person)	ONOMATOPOEIC
ガリガリ	hard/crunchy (of muscles, when used on person)	ONOMATOPOEIC
ムキムキ	muscular/brawny	slang
ツンツン	spiky (hairstyle); sticking up straight (e.g. plant stems)	ONOMATOPOEIC also in Table 141

VE.12 Amounts and sizes

Table 148: Verbs: amounts and sizes.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
どんなに	to what extent/amount	
こんなに	to this extent/amount	
そんなに	to that extent/amount	
あんなに	to that extent/amount (distant memory)	
どこまで	how far/to what extent/up to what point	
どのくらい\<nn/adj\>	how long/how far/how much	(どの位)
多く	many/much/plenty/a lot	
もっと	some more/even more/longer/further	
未満	less than/under/below (esp. ◯歳未満)	SUFFIX
ほとんど\<negative\>	hardly/barely/scarcely/little	(殆ど), also in Table 141
ギリギリ	just barely/only just/at the very limit/at the last moment	(限り限り)
半分	half	also a noun
十分	sufficiently/fully/thoroughly/well/perfectly	also an adjective
ほぼ	almost/roughly/approximately/about/around	
そこそこ	approximately/about/or so	also in Table 139
ほとんど	large majority/proportion; most/almost all of	(殆ど), also in Table 141
ピッタリ	tightly/closely; exactly/precisely; perfectly suited/in an ideal manner	
しっかり	firmly/securely/tightly (holding on); strongly/solidly/sturdily (built)	also in Table 141
初めて	for the first time	
また	again/once again/another time/some other time; also; on the other hand	(又)
もう一回	one more time/once again	
もっかい	one more time/once again	slang, abbreviation
\<v te\>初めて\<…\>	only after \<v te\> is it/do you \<…\>	
全員	all members/everyone	also a noun

VE.13 Onomatopoeia

Table 149: Verbs: general onomatopoeia.

Adverb	Meaning	Notes
ピンポン	ding-dong (doorbell/intercom)	ONOMATOPOEIC
ピンポン	ding ding ding!/correct!/right answer!	ONOMATOPOEIC, slang